

ALMADEN MINERALS LTD  
Form 20-F  
March 29, 2018

UNITED STATES

SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION

Washington, D.C. 20549

**FORM 20-F**

REGISTRATION STATEMENT PURSUANT TO SECTION 12(b) OR (g) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE  
ACT OF 1934  
OR

ANNUAL REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15 (d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE  
ACT OF 1934 **FOR THE FISCAL YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2017**

OR

TRANSITION REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF  
1934  
OR

SHELL COMPANY REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE  
ACT OF 1934

Date of event requiring this shell company report

For the transition period from \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_

**Commission file number 001-32702**

**ALMADEN MINERALS LTD.**

(Exact name of Registrant as specified in its charter)

**British Columbia, Canada**

(Jurisdiction of incorporation or organization)

**1333 Johnston Street, #210, Vancouver, British Columbia V6H 3R9**

(Address of principal executive offices)

**Korm Trieu, ktrieu@almadenminerals.com, 1333 Johnston Street, #210, Vancouver, BC V6H 3R9**

(Name, Telephone, E-mail and/or Facsimile number and Address of Company Contact Person)

Securities registered or to be registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act.

Title of each class	Name of each exchange on which registered
---------------------	---

<b>Common Stock without Par Value</b>	<b>NYSE MKT</b>
---------------------------------------	-----------------

Securities registered or to be registered pursuant to Section 12(g) of the Act.

**None**

(Title of Class)

Securities for which there is a reporting obligation pursuant to Section 15(d) of the Act.

**None**



Indicate the number of outstanding shares of each of the issuer's classes of capital or common stock as of the close of the period covered by the annual report.

**102,199,625**

Indicate by check mark if the registrant is a well-known seasoned issuer, as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act.

Yes  No

If this report is an annual or transition report, indicate by check mark if the registrant is not required to file report pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.

Yes  No

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days.

Yes  No

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant has submitted electronically and posted on its corporate Website, if any, every Interactive Data File required to be submitted and posted pursuant to Rule 405 of Regulation S-T (§232.405 of this chapter) during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the Registrant was required to submit and post such files).

Yes  No

**As a foreign private issuer that prepares its financial statements in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards ("IFRS") as issued by the International Accounting Standards Board ("IASB"), the Registrant has not previously been required to submit to the SEC and post on its corporate website Interactive Data Files (as defined by Item 11 of Regulation S-T) pursuant to Rule 405 of Regulation S-T. This requirement will now**

**apply to the Company for this its first annual report for a fiscal period ending on or after December 15, 2017.**

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer or a non-accelerated filer. See definition of “accelerated filer and large accelerated filer” in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

Large accelerated filer ( ) Accelerated filer (X) Non-accelerated filer ( ) Emerging Growth Company (X)

If an emerging growth company that prepares its financial statements in accordance with U.S. GAAP, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards<sup>†</sup> provided pursuant to Section 13(a) of the Exchange Act. ( )

Indicate by check mark which basis of accounting the registrant has used to prepare the financial statements included in this filing:

U.S. GAAP ( ) International Financial Reporting Standards as issued (X) Other ( )  
by the International Accounting Standards Board

If "Other" has been checked in response to the previous question, indicate by check mark which financial statement item the registrant has elected to follow.

Item 17  Item 18

If this is an annual report, indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a shell company (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act).

Yes  No

(APPLICABLE ONLY TO ISSUERS INVOLVED IN BANKRUPTCY PROCEEDS DURING THE PAST FIVE YEARS)

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant has filed all documents and reports required to be filed by Section 12, 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 subsequent to the distribution of securities under a plan confirmed by a court.

Yes  No

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

	<b>Page</b>
<u>Glossary of Geologic and Mining Terms</u>	<u>5</u>
<u>Notes Concerning Terminology Related to Resources and Reserves</u>	<u>12</u>
<u>Cautionary Note to U.S. Investors Regarding Mineral Resource and Mineral Reserve Estimates</u>	<u>15</u>
<u>Cautionary Note Regarding Forward-Looking Statements</u>	<u>16</u>
 <b>PART I</b>	
<u>Item 1 Identity of Directors, Senior Management and Advisers</u>	<u>17</u>
<u>Item 2 Offer Statistics and Expected Timetable</u>	<u>17</u>
<u>Item 3 Key Information</u>	<u>17</u>
<u>Item 4 Information on the Company</u>	<u>23</u>
<u>Item 5 Operating and Financial Review and Prospects</u>	<u>41</u>
<u>Item 6 Directors, Senior Management and Employees</u>	<u>47</u>
<u>Item 7 Major Shareholders and Related Party Transactions</u>	<u>70</u>
<u>Item 8 Financial Information</u>	<u>72</u>
<u>Item 9 The Offer and Listing</u>	<u>72</u>
<u>Item 10 Additional Information</u>	<u>75</u>
<u>Item 11 Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk</u>	<u>86</u>
<u>Item 12 Description of Securities Other than Equity Securities</u>	<u>86</u>
 <b>PART II</b>	
<u>Item 13 Defaults, Dividend Arrearages and Delinquencies</u>	<u>86</u>
<u>Item 14 Material Modifications to the Rights of Security Holders and Use of Proceeds</u>	<u>86</u>
<u>Item 15 Controls and Procedures</u>	<u>86</u>
<u>Item 16A Audit Committee Financial Expert</u>	<u>87</u>
<u>Item 16B Code of Ethics</u>	<u>87</u>
<u>Item 16C Principal Accountant Fees and Services</u>	<u>88</u>
<u>Item 16D Exemptions from the Listing Standards for Audit Committees</u>	<u>88</u>
<u>Item 16E Purchase of Equity Securities by the Issuer and Affiliated Purchasers</u>	<u>88</u>
<u>Item 16F Change in Registrant's Certifying Accounts</u>	<u>88</u>
<u>Item 16G Corporate Governance</u>	<u>89</u>
<u>Item 16H Mine Safety Disclosure</u>	<u>89</u>
 <b>PART III</b>	
<u>Item 17 Financial Statements</u>	<u>89</u>
<u>Item 18 Financial Statements</u>	<u>89</u>
 <u>Item 19 Exhibits</u>	 <u>89</u>
 <u>Signatures</u>	 <u>92</u>





## Glossary of Geologic and Mining Terms

**Adularia:** A colourless, moderate to low-temperature variety of orthoclase feldspar typically with a relatively high barium content. It is a prominent constituent of low sulphidation epithermal veins.

**Alkalic Intrusive:** An igneous rock emplaced below ground level in which the feldspar is dominantly sodic and or potassic.

**Alkalinity:** The chemical nature of solutions characterized by a high concentration of hydroxyl ions.

**Alteration:** Usually referring to chemical reactions in a rock mass resulting from the passage of hydrothermal fluids.

**Andesite:** A dark-coloured, fine-grained extrusive rock that, when porphyritic, contains phenocrysts composed primarily of zoned sodic plagioclase (esp. andesine) and one or more of the mafic minerals (eg. Biotite, horn-blende, pyroxene), with a ground-mass composed generally of the same minerals as the phenocrysts; the extrusive equivalent of *diorite*. Andesite grades into *latite* with increasing alkali feldspar content, and into *dacite* with more alkali feldspar and quartz. It was named by Buch in 1826 from the Andes Mountains, South America.

**Anomalous:** A geological feature, often subsurface, distinguished by geological, geochemical or geophysical means, which is detectably different than the general surroundings and is often of potential economic value.

**Anomaly:** Any concentration of metal noticeably above or below the average background concentration.

**Argillic:** A form of alteration characterized by the alteration of original minerals to clays.

**Arsenopyrite:** A sulphide of arsenic and iron with the chemical composition FeAsS.

**Assay:** An analysis to determine the presence, absence or quantity of one or more components.

**Axis:** An imaginary hinge line about which the fold limbs are bent. The axis of a fold can be at the top or bottom of the fold, can be tilted or horizontal.

**Batholith:** An intrusion, usually granitic, which has a large exposed surface area and no observable bottom. Usually associated with orogenic belts.

**Breccia:** Rock consisting of more or less angular fragments in a matrix of finer-grained material or cementing material.

**Brecciated:** Rock broken up by geological forces.

**Bulk sample:** A very large sample, the kind of sample to take from broken rock or of gravels and sands when testing placer deposits.

**Calc-silicate:** Calcium-bearing silicate minerals. These minerals are commonly formed as a result of the interaction of molten rock and its derived, hot hydrothermal fluids with very chemically reactive calcium carbonate (limestone). Calc-silicate minerals include garnet, pyroxene, amphibole and epidote. These minerals are commonly described as skarn and are genetically and spatially associated with a wide range of metals

**Chert:** A very fine grained siliceous rock. Many limestones contain nodules and thin lenses of chert.

**Chip sample:** A sample composed of discontinuous chips taken along a surface across a given line.

**Claim:** That portion of public mineral lands, which a party has staked or marked out in accordance with provincial or state mining laws, to acquire the right to explore for the minerals under the surface.

**Clastic:** Consisting of rock material that has been mechanically derived, transported, and deposited. Such material is also called detrital.

**Cleavage:** The tendency of a crystal to split, or break, along planes of structural weakness.

**Concordant Bodies:** Intrusive igneous bodies whose contacts are parallel to the bedding of the intruded rock.

**Conglomerate:** Rock composed of mostly rounded fragments which are of gravel size or larger in a finer grained matrix.

**Craton:** A central stable region common to nearly all continents and composed chiefly of highly metamorphosed Precambrian rocks.

**Cretaceous:** Geological time period between 136 and 64 million years ago.

**Crystalline:** Means the specimen is made up of one or more groups of crystals.

**Cut-off grade:** The minimum grade of mineralization used to establish quantitative and qualitative estimates of total mineralization.

**Dacite:** A fine grained acid volcanic rock, similar to rhyolite in which the feldspar is predominantly plagioclase.

**Degradation:** The ongoing process of erosion in a stream.

**Diagenesis:** The changes that occur in a sediment during and after lithification. These changes include compaction, cementation, replacement, and recrystallization.

**Diamond drill:** A type of rotary drill in which the cutting is done by abrasion using diamonds embedded in a matrix rather than by percussion. The drill cuts a core of rock which is recovered in long cylindrical sections.

**Dilution:** Results from the mixing in of unwanted gangue or waste rock with the ore during mining.

**Dip:** Geological measurement of the angle of maximum slope of planar elements in rocks. Can be applied to beddings, jointing, fault planes, etc.

**Discordant Bodies:** Intrusive igneous bodies whose contacts cut across the bedding, or other pre-existing structures, to the intruded rock.

**Disseminated deposit:** Deposit in which the mineralization is scattered through a large volume of host rock, sometimes as separate mineral grains, or sometimes along joint or fault surfaces.

**Dyke:** A tabular, discordant, intrusive igneous body.

**Earn in:** The right to acquire an interest in a property pursuant to an Option Agreement.

**Ejecta:** Pyroclastic material thrown out or ejected by a volcano. It includes ash, volcanic bombs, and lapilli.

**Epithermal:** Epithermal deposits are a class of ore deposits that form generally less than 1 km from surface. These deposits, which can host economic quantities of gold, silver, copper, lead and zinc are formed as a result of the precipitation of ore minerals from up-welling hydrothermal fluids. There are several classes of epithermal deposits that are defined on the basis of fluid chemistry and resulting alteration and ore mineralogy. Fluid chemistry is largely controlled by the proximity to igneous intrusive rocks and as a result igneous fluid content.

**Extrusive Rock:** Igneous rock that has solidified on the earth's surface from volcanic action.

**Fault:** A fracture in a rock where there had been displacement of the two sides.



**Faults:** Breaks in rocks with noticeable movement or displacement of the rocks on either side of the break.

**Feldspar:** A group of aluminum silicate minerals closely related in chemical composition and physical properties. There are two major chemical varieties of feldspar: the potassium aluminum, or potash, feldspars and the sodium-calcium-aluminum, or plagioclase, feldspars. The feldspars possess a tetrahedral framework of silicon and oxygen, with the partial substitution of aluminum for the silicon. They make up about 60 percent of the earth's crust.

**Felsic:** Light colored silicate minerals, mainly quartz and feldspar, or an igneous rock comprised largely of felsic minerals (granite, rhyolite).

**Fluid inclusion:** Fluid inclusions are "bubbles" of fluid trapped within the host mineral during its deposition from its parent hydrothermal fluid. They are tiny remnants of the exact fluid from which the host mineral and its associated ore minerals deposited and they provide direct information about the fluid composition, temperature and pressure at which the hydrothermal deposit formed.

**Folds:** Are flexures in bedded or layered rocks. They are formed when forces are applied gradually to rocks over a long period of time.

**Fracture:** Breaks in a rock, usually due to intensive folding or faulting.

**Gangue:** Term used to describe worthless minerals or rock waste mixed in with the valuable minerals.

**Geochemical Anomaly:** An area of elevated values of a particular element in soil or rock samples collected during the preliminary reconnaissance search for locating favourable metal concentrations that could indicate the presence of surface or drill targets.

**Geochemistry:** The study of the chemistry of rocks, minerals, and mineral deposits.

**Geophysics:** The study of the physical properties of rocks, minerals, and mineral deposits.

**Gouge:** The finely ground rock that results from the abrasion along a fault surface.

**Grade:** The concentration of each ore metal in a rock sample, usually given as weight percent. Where extremely low concentrations are involved, the concentration may be given in grams per tonne (g/t) or ounces per ton (oz/t). The grade of an ore deposit is calculated, often using sophisticated statistical procedures, as an average of the grades of a very large number of samples collected from throughout the deposit.

**Granite:** A coarse grained, plutonic igneous rock that is normally pale pink, pale pink-brown, or pale grey, and composed of quartz, alkali feldspar, micas and accessory minerals.

**Granodiorite:** A coarse grained, plutonic igneous rock that is normally pale grey, and composed of quartz, calc-alkali feldspar, micas and accessory minerals.

**Grid:** A network composed of two sets of uniformly spaced parallel lines, usually intersecting at right angles and forming squares, superimposed on a map, chart, or aerial photograph, to permit identification of ground locations by means of a system of coordinates and to facilitate computation of direction and distance and size of geologic, geochemical or geophysical features.

**Hectare:** A square of 100 meters on each side.

**Host rock:** The rock within which the ore deposit occurs.

**Hydrothermal:** Of or pertaining to hot water, to the action of hot water, or to the products of this action, such as a mineral deposit precipitated from a hot aqueous solution; also, said of the solution itself. "Hydrothermal" is generally used for any hot water, but has been restricted by some to water of magmatic origin.

**Igneous:** Means a rock formed by the cooling of molten silicate material.

**Induced polarization (I.P.) method:** The method used to measure various electrical responses to the passage of alternating currents of different frequencies through near-surface rocks or to the passage of pulses of electricity.

**Intermediate:** An igneous rock made up of both felsic and mafic minerals (diorite).

**Intrusion:** General term for a body of igneous rock formed below the surface.

**Intrusive Rock:** Any igneous rock solidified from magma beneath the earth's surface.

**Joint venture agreement:** An agreement where the parties agree to the terms on which a property will be jointly explored, developed, and mined. (See also "Option agreement" and "Earn in").

**Jurassic:** Geological time period between 195 and 136 million years ago.

**Kriging:** (a) A statistical technique employed in calculating grade and tonnage of ore reserves from sampling data. The data are handled by computer. (b) A technique for interpolating which honors data points exactly. An output point is calculated as a linear combination of known data points. Kriging attempts to produce the best linear unbiased estimate. Used to interpolate between drill holes.

**K-silicate:** Potassium-bearing silicates. Potassium silicates are very common rock-forming minerals, however they are also formed by the interaction of hydrothermal fluids derived from the cooling intrusive rocks that are genetically and spatially associated with porphyry and epithermal deposits. Potassium feldspar (orthoclase) and potassium mica (biotite) are both commonly closely associated with copper-molybdenum ore in porphyry copper deposits.

**K-spar:** Potassium feldspar.



**Lava:** Means an igneous rock formed by the cooling of molten silicate material which escapes to the earth's surface or pours out onto the sea floor.

**Limestone:** Sedimentary rock that is composed mostly of carbonates, the two most common of which are calcium and magnesium carbonates.

**Lithosphere:** The crust and upper mantle, located above the asthenosphere and composing the rigid plates.

**Mafic:** A general term used to describe ferromagnesian minerals. Rocks composed mainly of ferromagnesian minerals are correctly termed melanocratic.

**Magma:** Naturally occurring molten rock material, generated within the earth and capable of intrusion and extrusion, from which igneous rocks have been derived through solidification and related processes. It may or may not contain suspended solids (such as crystals and rock fragments) and/or gas phases.

**Massive:** Implies large mass. Applied in the context of hand specimens of, for example, sulphide ores, it usually means the specimen is composed essentially of sulphides with few, if any, other constituents.

**Metamorphic:** Means any rock which is altered within the earth's crust by the effects of heat and/or pressure and/or chemical reactions. Pertains to the process of metamorphism or to its results.

**Metasediment:** A sediment or sedimentary rock that shows evidence of having been subjected to metamorphism.

**Metavolcanic:** An informal term for volcanic rocks that show evidence of having been subject to metamorphism.

**Mineral claim:** A legal entitlement to minerals in a certain defined area of ground.

**Mineral Deposit or Mineralized Material:** A mineralized underground body which has been intersected by sufficient closely spaced drill holes and/or underground sampling to support sufficient tonnage and average grade of metal(s) to warrant further exploration-development work. This deposit does not qualify as a commercially mineable ore body (Reserves), as prescribed under Commission standards, until a final and comprehensive economic, technical, and legal feasibility study based upon the test results is concluded.

**Mineral:** A naturally occurring, inorganic, solid element or compound that possesses an orderly internal arrangement of atoms and a unique set of physical and chemical properties.

**Mineralization:** Usually implies minerals of value occurring in rocks.

**National Instrument 43-101 or NI 43-101:** A rule developed by the Canadian Securities Administrators and administered by the provincial securities commissions that govern how issuers disclose scientific and technical information about their mineral projects to the public. It covers oral statements as well as written documents and websites. It requires that all disclosure be based on advice by a "qualified person" and in some circumstances that the person be independent of the issuer and the property.

**Net profits interest:** A contractual granted right to some portion of the profits after deduction of expenses sometimes expressed as a form of royalty.

**Net smelter returns:** Means the amount actually paid to the mine or mill owner from the sale of ore, minerals and other materials or concentrates mined and removed from mineral properties. A royalty based on net smelter returns usually provides cash flow that is free of any operating or capital costs and environmental liabilities.

**Option agreement:** An agreement where the optionee can exercise certain options to acquire or increase an interest in a property by making periodic payments or share issuances or both to the optionor or by exploring, developing or producing from the optionor's property or both. Usually upon the acquisition of such interest, unless it is a 100% interest, all operations thereafter are on a joint venture basis.

**Ordinary kriging:** The basic technique of kriging and uses a weighted average of neighboring samples to estimate the 'unknown' value at a given location. Weights are optimized using the semi-variogram model, the location of the samples and all the relevant inter-relationships between known and unknown values. The technique also provides a "standard error" which may be used to quantify confidence levels.

**Ore:** A natural aggregate of one or more minerals which may be mined and sold at a profit, or from which some part may be profitably separated.

**Ore reserve:** The measured quantity and grade of all or part of a mineralized body in a mine or undeveloped mineral deposit for which the mineralization is sufficiently defined and measured on three sides to form the basis of at least a preliminary mine production plan for economically viable mining.

**Orogeny:** The process of forming mountains by folding and thrusting.

**Outcrop:** An in situ exposure of bedrock.

**Overburden:** A general term for any material covering or obscuring rocks from view.

**oz/t or opt:** Ounces per ton.

**Paleozoic:** An era of geologic time, from the end of the Precambrian to the beginning of the Mesozoic, or from about 570 to about 225 million years ago.

**Phenocrysts:** An unusually large crystal in a relatively finer grained matrix.

**Pluton:** Term for an igneous intrusion, usually formed from magma.

**Porphyry:** An igneous rock composed of larger crystals set within a finer ground mass.

**Pyroclastic rock:** A rock of volcanic origin consisting of highly variable mixture of rock fragments, cinders and ashes and bits of crystals and glass.

**Quartz monzonite:** A coarse grained, plutonic igneous rock that is normally pale pink, and composed of quartz, alkali feldspar, micas and accessory minerals.

**Rare Earth:** A group of rare metallic chemical elements with consecutive atomic numbers of 57 to 71.

**Reclamation bond:** A bond usually required by governmental mining regulations when mechanized work on a property is contemplated. Proceeds of the bond are used to reclaim any workings or put right any damage if reclamation undertaken does not satisfy the requirements of the regulations.

**Reserve:** That part of a mineral deposit which could be economically extracted or produced at the time of the reserve determination.

**Reserves:** A natural aggregate of one or more minerals which, at a specified time and place, may be mined and sold at a profit, or from which some part may be profitably separated.

**Reverse circulation drill:** A rotary percussion drill in which the drilling mud and cuttings return to the surface through the drill pipe.

**Rhyolite:** The fine grained equivalent of granite.

**Royalty interest:** A royalty, the calculation and payment of which is tied to some production unit such as ton of concentrate or ounce of gold or silver produced. A common form of royalty interest is based on the net smelter return.

**Sample:** Small amount of material that is supposed to be absolutely typical or representative of the object being sampled.

**Sandstone:** Composed of sand-sized fragments cemented together. As a rule the fragments contain a high percentage of quartz.

**Sedimentary:** A rock formed from cemented or compacted sediments.

**Sediments:** Are composed of the debris resulting from the weathering and breakup of other rocks that have been deposited by or carried to the oceans by rivers, or left over from glacial erosion or sometimes from wind action.

**Selvage:** A marginal zone, as in a dyke or vein, having some distinctive feature of fabric or composition.

**Sericite:** A fine-grained variety of mica occurring in small scales, especially in schists.

**Shale:** An argillaceous rock consisting of silt or clay-sized particles cemented together. Most shales are quite soft, because they contain large amounts of clay minerals.

**Silicate:** Most rocks are made up of a small number of silicate minerals ranging from quartz ( $\text{SiO}_2$ ) to more complex minerals such as orthoclase feldspar ( $\text{KAlSi}_3\text{O}_8$ ) or hornblende ( $\text{Ca}_2\text{Na}(\text{Mg},\text{Fe})_4(\text{Al},\text{Fe},\text{Ti})\text{Si}_8\text{O}_{22}(\text{OH})_2$ ).

**Sill:** Tabular intrusion which is sandwiched between layers in the host rock.

**Skarn:** A thermally altered impure limestone in which material has been added to the original rock. Skarns are generally characterized by the presence of calcium and silica rich minerals. Many skarns contain sulphide minerals which in some cases can be of economic value.

**Stock:** An igneous intrusive body of unknown depth with a surface exposure of less than 104 square kilometres. The sides, or contacts, of a stock, like those of a batholith, are usually steep and broaden with depth.

**Stockwork:** A mineral deposit consisting of a three-dimensional network of closely spaced planar or irregular veinlets.

**Strike:** The bearing, or magnetic compass direction, of an imaginary line formed by the intersection of a horizontal plane with any planar surface, most commonly with bedding planes or foliation planes in rocks.

**Sulphide minerals:** A mineral compound characterized by the linkage of sulfur with a metal or semimetal; e.g., galena.

**Syncline:** A fold in which the bed has been forced down in the middle or up on the sides to form a trough.

**Tailings:** Material rejected from a mill after recoverable valuable minerals have been extracted.

**Tailings pond:** A pond where tailings are disposed of.

**Tonne:** Metric ton – 1,000 kilograms – equivalent to 1.1023 tons.

**Triassic:** Geological time period between 225 and 195 million years ago.

**Tuff:** A finer grained pyroclastic rock made up mostly of ash and other fine grained volcanic material.

**Veins:** The mineral deposits that are found filling openings in rocks created by faults or replacing rocks on either side of faults.

**Vuggy silica:** In a high sulphidation epithermal environment, the highly acidic waters have dissolved everything but silica resulting in a highly porous and porous marker rock which is a good host for gold deposition. It is an indicator mineralization typical of epithermal rocks.

**Waste:** Rock which is not ore. Usually referred to that rock which has to be removed during the normal course of mining in order to get at the ore.

## **Glossary of Abbreviations**

**Ag:** Silver

**Ag g/t:** Silver grade measured in grams per metric ton

Converts to ounces per ton by dividing by 34.286

**Au:** Gold

**Au g/t:** Gold grade measured in grams per metric ton

Converts to ounces per ton by dividing by 34.286

**Cu:** Copper

**g/t:** grams per tonne

**IP:** Induced Polarization geophysical survey

**masl:** meters above sea level

**NSR:** net smelter returns royalty

**Oz:** Troy ounce

**QA/QC:** Quality Assurance/Quality Control

**tpd:** Tonnes per day

**ton:** Short ton (2,000 pounds)

**tonne:** Metric ton (1000 kilograms - 2204.62 pounds)





## NOTES CONCERNING TERMINOLOGY RELATED TO RESOURCES AND RESERVES

Please see “CAUTIONARY NOTE TO U.S. INVESTORS REGARDING MINERAL RESOURCE AND MINERAL RESERVE ESTIMATES,” below.

The terms "mineral resource", "measured mineral resource", "indicated mineral resource", "inferred mineral resource", "mineral reserve", "probable mineral reserve" and "proven mineral reserve" used in this Annual Report are Canadian mining terms as defined in accordance with National Instrument 43-101 ("NI 43-101"), Standards of Disclosure for Mineral Projects under the guidelines set out in the Canadian Institute of Mining, Metallurgy and Petroleum (the "CIM") Standards on Mineral Resources and Mineral Reserves, adopted by the CIM Council. On November 14, 2004, November 27, 2010 and May 10, 2014, CIM Council adopted an update to the CIM Definition Standards to reflect the more detailed guidance available and effect certain editorial changes required to maintain consistency with current regulations. This version of the CIM Definition Standards includes further editorial changes required to maintain compatibility with the new version of National Instrument 43-101 which became Canadian law in 2011. The CIM Definition Standards can be viewed on the CIM website at [www.cim.org](http://www.cim.org). In accordance with Industry Guide 7, Description of Property by Issuers Engaged or to be Engaged in Significant Mining Operations, issued by the U. S. Securities and Exchange Commission (the "Commission"), a reserve is termed a "mineral deposit".

### Definitions

#### *Qualified Person*

Mineral Resource and Mineral Reserve estimates and resulting technical reports under NI 43-101 must be prepared by or under the direction of, and dated and signed by, a Qualified Person. A "Qualified Person" means an individual who is an engineer or geoscientist with a university degree, or equivalent accreditation, with at least five years of experience in mineral exploration, mine development or operation or mineral project assessment, or any combination of these; has experience relevant to the subject matter of the mineral project and the technical report; and is a member or licensee in good standing of a professional association. The Qualified Person(s) should be clearly satisfied that they could face their peers and demonstrate competence and relevant experience in the commodity, type of deposit and situation under consideration. If doubt exists, the person must either seek or obtain opinions from other colleagues or demonstrate that he or she has obtained assistance from experts in areas where he or she lacked the necessary expertise. Determination of what constitutes relevant experience can be a difficult area and common sense has to be exercised. For example, in estimating Mineral Resources for vein gold mineralization, experience in a high-nugget, vein-type mineralization such as tin, uranium etc. should be relevant whereas experience in massive base metal deposits may not be. As a second example, for a person to qualify as a Qualified Person in the estimation of Mineral Reserves for alluvial gold deposits, he or she would need to have relevant experience in the evaluation and extraction of such deposits. Experience with placer deposits containing minerals other than gold, may not necessarily provide appropriate relevant experience for gold. In addition to experience in the style of mineralization, a Qualified Person preparing or taking responsibility for Mineral Resource estimates must have sufficient experience in the sampling, assaying, or other property testing techniques that are relevant to the deposit under consideration in order to be aware of problems that could affect the reliability of the data. Some appreciation of extraction and processing techniques

applicable to that deposit type might also be important.

Estimation of Mineral Resources is often a team effort, for example, involving one person or team collecting the data and another person or team preparing the Mineral Resource estimate. Within this team, geologists usually occupy the pivotal role. Estimation of Mineral Reserves is almost always a team effort involving a number of technical disciplines, and within this team mining engineers have an important role. Documentation for a Mineral Resource and Mineral Reserve estimate must be compiled by, or under the supervision of, a Qualified Person(s), whether a geologist, mining engineer or member of another discipline. It is recommended that, where there is a clear division of responsibilities within a team, each Qualified Person should accept responsibility for his or her particular contribution. For example, one Qualified Person could accept responsibility for the collection of Mineral Resource data, another for the Mineral Reserve estimation process, another for the mining study, and the project leader could accept responsibility for the overall document. It is important that the Qualified Person accepting overall responsibility for a Mineral Resource and/or Mineral Reserve estimate and supporting documentation, which has been prepared in whole or in part by others, is satisfied that the other contributors are Qualified Persons with respect to the work for which they are taking responsibility and that such persons are provided adequate documentation.

***Preliminary Economic Assessment (PEA)***

A study, other than a Pre-Feasibility or Feasibility Study, that includes an economic analysis of the potential viability of mineral resources.

***Preliminary Feasibility Study (Pre-Feasibility Study)***

The CIM Definition Standards requires the completion of a Preliminary Feasibility Study as the minimum prerequisite for the conversion of Mineral Resources to Mineral Reserves.

A Preliminary Feasibility Study is a comprehensive study of a range of options for the technical and economic viability of a mineral project that has advanced to a stage where a preferred mining method, in the case of underground mining, or the pit configuration, in the case of an open pit, is established and an effective method of mineral processing is determined. It includes a financial analysis based on reasonable assumptions on mining, processing, metallurgical, economic, marketing, legal, environmental, social and governmental considerations and the evaluation of any other relevant factors which are sufficient for a Qualified Person, acting reasonably, to determine if all or part of the Mineral Resource may be classified as a Mineral Reserve.

***Feasibility Study***

A Feasibility Study is a comprehensive technical and economic study of the selected development option for a mineral project that includes appropriately detailed assessments of realistically assumed mining, processing, metallurgical, economic, marketing, legal, environmental, social and governmental considerations together with any other relevant operational factors and detailed financial analysis, that are necessary to demonstrate at the time of reporting that extraction is reasonably justified (economically mineable). The results of the study may reasonably serve as the basis for a final decision by a proponent or financial institution to proceed with, or finance, the development of the project. The confidence level of the study will be higher than that of a Pre-Feasibility Study.

***Exploration Information***

Exploration information means geological, geophysical, geochemical, sampling, drilling, trenching, analytical testing, assaying, mineralogical, metallurgical and other similar information concerning a particular property that is derived from activities undertaken to locate, investigate, define or delineate a mineral prospect or mineral deposit. It is recognized that in the review and compilation of data on a project or property, previous or historical estimates of tonnage and grade, not meeting the minimum requirement for classification as Mineral Resource, may be encountered. If a Qualified Person reports Exploration Information in the form of tonnage and grade, it must be clearly stated that these estimates are conceptual or order of magnitude and that they do not meet the criteria of a Mineral Resource.

***Mineral Resource***

Mineral Resources are sub-divided, in order of increasing geological confidence, into Inferred, Indicated and Measured categories. An Inferred Mineral Resource has a lower level of confidence than that applied to an Indicated Mineral Resource. An Indicated Mineral Resource has a higher level of confidence than an Inferred Mineral Resource but has a lower level of confidence than a Measured Mineral Resource. A Mineral Resource is a concentration or occurrence of diamonds, natural solid inorganic material, or natural solid fossilized organic material including base and precious metals, coal, and industrial minerals in or on the Earth's crust in such form and quantity and of such a grade or quality that it has reasonable prospects for economic extraction. The location, quantity, grade, geological characteristics and continuity of a Mineral Resource are known, estimated or interpreted from specific geological evidence and knowledge. The term Mineral Resource covers mineralization and natural material of intrinsic economic interest which has been identified and estimated through exploration and sampling and within which Mineral Reserves may subsequently be defined by the consideration and application of technical, economic, legal, environmental, socio-economic and governmental factors. The phrase "reasonable prospects for economic extraction" implies a judgment by the Qualified Person in respect of the technical and economic factors likely to influence the prospect of economic extraction. A Mineral Resource is an inventory of mineralization that under realistically assumed and justifiable technical and economic conditions might become economically extractable. These assumptions must be presented explicitly in both public and technical reports.

### ***Inferred Mineral Resource***

An “Inferred Mineral Resource” is that part of a Mineral Resource for which quantity and grade or quality can be estimated on the basis of geological evidence and limited sampling and reasonably assumed, but not verified, geological and grade continuity. The estimate is based on limited information and sampling gathered through appropriate techniques from locations such as outcrops, trenches, pits, workings and drill holes. Due to the uncertainty that may be attached to Inferred Mineral Resources, it cannot be assumed that all or any part of an Inferred Mineral Resource will be upgraded to an Indicated or Measured Mineral Resource as a result of continued exploration. Confidence in the estimate is insufficient to allow the meaningful application of technical and economic parameters or to enable an evaluation of economic viability worthy of public disclosure. Inferred Mineral Resources must be excluded from estimates forming the basis of feasibility or other economic studies.

### ***Indicated Mineral Resource***

An “Indicated Mineral Resource” is that part of a Mineral Resource for which quantity, grade or quality, densities, shape and physical characteristics can be estimated with a level of confidence sufficient to allow the appropriate application of technical and economic parameters, to support mine planning and evaluation of the economic viability of the deposit. The estimate is based on detailed and reliable exploration and testing information gathered through appropriate techniques from locations such as outcrops, trenches, pits, workings and drill holes that are spaced closely enough for geological and grade continuity to be reasonably assumed. Mineralization may be classified as an Indicated Mineral Resource by the Qualified Person when the nature, quality, quantity and distribution of data are such as to allow confident interpretation of the geological framework and to reasonably assume the continuity of mineralization. The Qualified Person must recognize the importance of the Indicated Mineral Resource category to the advancement of the feasibility of the project. An Indicated Mineral Resource estimate is of sufficient quality to support a Preliminary Feasibility Study which can serve as the basis for major development decisions.

### ***Measured Mineral Resource***

A “Measured Mineral Resource” is that part of a Mineral Resource for which quantity, grade or quality, densities, shape, and physical characteristics are so well established that they can be estimated with confidence sufficient to allow the appropriate application of technical and economic parameters, to support production planning and evaluation of the economic viability of the deposit. The estimate is based on detailed and reliable exploration, sampling and testing information gathered through appropriate techniques from locations such as outcrops, trenches, pits, workings and drill holes that are spaced closely enough to confirm both geological and grade continuity. Mineralization or other natural material of economic interest may be classified as a Measured Mineral Resource by the Qualified Person when the nature, quality, quantity and distribution of data are such that the tonnage and grade of the mineralization can be estimated to within close limits and that variation from the estimate would not significantly affect potential economic viability. This category requires a high level of confidence in, and understanding of, the geology and controls of the mineral deposit.

### ***Mineral Reserve***

Mineral Reserves are sub-divided in order of increasing confidence into Probable Mineral Reserves and Proven Mineral Reserves. A Probable Mineral Reserve has a lower level of confidence than a Proven Mineral Reserve.

A Mineral Reserve is the economically mineable part of a Measured or Indicated Mineral Resource demonstrated by at least a Preliminary Feasibility Study. This Study must include adequate information on mining, processing, metallurgical, economic and other relevant factors that demonstrate, at the time of reporting, that economic extraction can be justified. A Mineral Reserve includes diluting materials and allowances for losses that may occur when the material is mined. Mineral Reserves are those parts of Mineral Resources which, after the application of all mining factors, result in an estimated tonnage and grade which, in the opinion of the Qualified Person(s) making the estimates, is the basis of an economically viable project after taking account of all relevant processing, metallurgical, economic, marketing, legal, environment, socio-economic and government factors. Mineral Reserves are inclusive of diluting material that will be mined in conjunction with the Mineral Reserves and delivered to the treatment plant or equivalent facility. The term "Mineral Reserve" need not necessarily signify that extraction facilities are in place or operative or that all governmental approvals have been received. It does signify that there are reasonable expectations of such approvals.

***Probable Mineral Reserve***

A “Probable Mineral Reserve” is the economically mineable part of an Indicated and, in some circumstances, a Measured Mineral Resource demonstrated by at least a Preliminary Feasibility Study. This Study must include adequate information on mining, processing, metallurgical, economic, and other relevant factors that demonstrate, at the time of reporting, that economic extraction can be justified.

***Proven Mineral Reserve***

A “Proven Mineral Reserve” is the economically mineable part of a Measured Mineral Resource demonstrated by at least a Preliminary Feasibility Study. This Study must include adequate information on mining, processing, metallurgical, economic, and other relevant factors that demonstrate, at the time of reporting, that economic extraction is justified. Application of the Proven Mineral Reserve category implies that the Qualified Person has the highest degree of confidence in the estimate with the consequent expectation in the minds of the readers of the report. The term should be restricted to that part of the deposit where production planning is taking place and for which any variation in the estimate would not significantly affect potential economic viability.

**CAUTIONARY NOTE TO U.S. INVESTORS REGARDING MINERAL RESOURCE AND MINERAL RESERVE ESTIMATES**

As used in this Annual Report on Form 20-F, the terms “Mineral Reserve,” “Proven Mineral Reserve” and “Probable Mineral Reserve” are Canadian mining terms defined in accordance with NI 43-101 and the CIM Standards. These definitions differ from the definitions in SEC Industry Guide 7 under the U.S. Securities Act. Under SEC Industry Guide 7, a reserve is defined as that part of a mineral deposit which could be economically and legally extracted or produced at the time the reserve determination is made. The terms “Mineral Resource,” “Measured Mineral Resource,” “Indicated Mineral Resource” and “Inferred Mineral Resource” are defined in and required to be used by NI 43-101. However, these terms are not defined terms under SEC Industry Guide 7 and are normally not permitted to be used in reports and registration statements filed with the SEC. Investors are cautioned not to assume that all, or any part, of a mineral deposit in these categories will ever be converted into reserves. “Indicated Mineral Resource” and “Inferred Mineral Resource” have a great amount of uncertainty as to their existence, and great uncertainty as to their economic and legal feasibility. It cannot be assumed that all, or any part, of an Indicated Mineral Resource or an Inferred Mineral Resource will ever be upgraded to a higher category. Under Canadian rules, estimates of Inferred Mineral Resources may not form the basis of Feasibility or Preliminary Feasibility studies, except in rare cases. Investors are cautioned not to assume that all, or any part, of an Inferred Mineral Resource exists or is economically or legally mineable. Disclosure of “contained ounces” in a resource is permitted disclosure under Canadian regulations. However, the SEC normally only permits issuers to report mineralization that does not constitute “reserves” by SEC standards as in place tonnage and grade without reference to unit measures. Accordingly, information contained in this Annual Report on Form 20-F and the exhibits filed herewith or incorporated by reference herein contain descriptions of mineral deposits that may not be comparable to similar information made public by U.S. companies subject to the reporting and disclosure requirements under U.S. federal securities laws and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder. Further, the term “mineralized material” as used in this Annual Report on Form 20-F does not indicate “reserves” by SEC standards. We cannot be certain that mineralized material will ever be confirmed or converted into SEC Industry Guide 7 compliant “reserves”. Investors are cautioned not to assume that mineralized material will ever

be confirmed or converted into reserves or that mineralized material can be economically or legally extracted.

Conversion Table

Metric / Imperial

1.0 millimeter (mm) = 0.039 inches (in)

1.0 meter (m) = 3.28 feet (ft)

1.0 kilometer (km) = 0.621 miles (mi)

1.0 hectare (ha) = 2.471 acres (ac)

1.0 gram (g) = 0.032 troy ounces (oz)

1.0 metric tonne (t) = 1.102 short tons (ton)

1.0 g/t = 0.029 oz/ton

Unless otherwise indicated, all dollar (\$) amounts referred to herein are in Canadian dollars.



## CAUTIONARY NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

Statements contained in this Annual Report on Form 20-F of the Registrant, Almaden Minerals Ltd. (“Almaden” or the “Company”), and the exhibits attached hereto that are not historical facts are forward-looking statements within the meaning of U.S. and Canadian securities legislation and the U.S. Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995 that involve risks and uncertainties. Such forward-looking statements include, but are not limited to, statements with respect to anticipated results and developments in the Company’s operations, planned exploration and development of the Company’s properties, plans related to the Company’s business and other matters that may occur in the future. These statements relate to analyses and other information that are based on forecasts of future results, estimates of amounts not yet determinable and assumptions of management. Statements concerning Mineral Reserve and Mineral Resource estimates may also be deemed to constitute forward-looking statements to the extent that they involve estimates of the mineralization that will be encountered if a property is developed, and in the case of Mineral Reserves, such statements reflect the conclusion based on certain assumptions that the mineral deposit can be economically exploited. Any statements that express or involve discussions with respect to predictions, expectations, beliefs, plans, projections, objectives, assumptions or future events or performance (often, but not always, using words or phrases such as “expects” or “does not expect”, “is expected”, “anticipates” or “does not anticipate”, “plans”, “estimates” or “intends”, or stating that certain actions, events or results “may”, “could”, “would”, “might” or “will” (or the negative and grammatical variations of any of these terms and similar expressions) be taken, occur or be achieved) are not statements of historical fact and may be forward-looking statements. Forward-looking statements and forward-looking information are based, in part, on assumptions and factors that may change and are subject to a variety of known and unknown risks, uncertainties and other factors which could cause actual events or results, performance or achievements of the Company to differ materially from those expressed or implied by the forward-looking statements and forward-looking information. Some of the important risks, uncertainties and other factors that could affect forward-looking statements and forward-looking information include, but are not limited to, those described further in the sections entitled “ITEM 3. KEY INFORMATION - Risk Factors”, “ITEM 4. INFORMATION ON THE COMPANY - Business Overview”, “ITEM 4. INFORMATION ON THE COMPANY – Principal Property Interests” and “ITEM 5. OPERATING AND FINANCIAL REVIEW AND PROSPECTS” and in the exhibits attached to this Annual Report on Form 20-F. Should one or more of these risks, uncertainties and other factors materialize, or should underlying assumptions prove incorrect, actual results may vary materially from those described in the Company’s forward-looking statements or forward-looking information. There can be no assurance that forward-looking statements will prove to be accurate, as actual results and future events could differ materially from those anticipated in such statements and information. The forward-looking statements and forward-looking information are based on beliefs, expectations and opinions of the Company’s management on the date of this Annual Report on Form 20-F and speak only as of the date hereof and the Company does not undertake any obligation to publicly update forward-looking statements or forward-looking information contained herein to reflect events or circumstances after the date hereof, except as required by law. For the reasons set forth above, investors should not place undue reliance on forward-looking statements.

Forward-looking statements and other information contained herein concerning the mining industry and the Company’s expectations concerning the mining industry are based on estimates prepared by the Company using data from publicly available sources as well as from market research and industry analysis and on assumptions based on data and knowledge of this industry which the Company believes to be reasonable. However, this data is inherently imprecise, although generally indicative of relative market positions, market shares and performance characteristics. While the Company is not aware of any misstatements regarding any mining industry data presented herein, the industry involves risks and uncertainties and is subject to change based on various factors.

Certain historical and forward-looking information contained in this Annual Report on Form 20-F has been provided by, or derived from information provided by, certain persons other than the Company. Although the Company does not have any knowledge that would indicate that any such information is untrue or incomplete, the Company assumes no responsibility for the accuracy and completeness of such information or the failure by such other persons to disclose events which may have occurred or may affect the completeness or accuracy of such information, but which is unknown to the Company.

Please consult the Company's public filings at [www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov) for further, more detailed information concerning these matters.

## **PART I**

### **Item 1. Identity of Directors, Senior Management and Advisors**

Not applicable

### **Item 2. Offer Statistics and Expected Timetable**

Not applicable

### **Item 3. Key Information**

The following selected financial data of the Company for Fiscal 2017, Fiscal 2016 and Fiscal 2015 ended December 31st was derived from the consolidated financial statements of the Company included elsewhere in this 20-F Annual Report. The selected financial data set forth for Fiscal 2014 and Fiscal 2013 ended December 31st are derived from the Company's audited consolidated financial statements, not included herein. The selected financial data should be read in conjunction with the consolidated financial statements and other information included immediately following the text of this Annual Report.

The consolidated financial statements of the Company have been prepared in accordance and compliance with International Financial Reporting Standards as issued by the International Accounting Standards Board ("IFRS").

The basis of preparation is described in Note 3 of the consolidated financial statements.

#### **Table No. 1**

#### **Selected Financial Data**

#### **International Financial Reporting Standards ("IFRS")**

**(expressed in thousands of Canadian dollars, except share and per share data)**

	Year Ended 12/31/2017	Year Ended 12/31/2016	Year Ended 12/31/2015	Year Ended 12/31/2014	Year Ended 12/31/2013
Revenues	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 220
Other Income (loss)	468	444	2,711	(9,496 )	-
Net loss and comprehensive loss	(5,231 )	(4,024 )	(1,145 )	(14,701 )	(6,357 )
Basic net (loss) income per common share	(0.05 )	(0.05 )	(0.02 )	(0.23 )	(0.10 )
Diluted net (loss) income per common share	(0.05 )	(0.05 )	(0.02 )	(0.23 )	(0.10 )
Weighted average shares (000)	95,873	82,323	73,249	66,331	62,055
Working capital	16,065	9,293	5,808	9,172	12,676
Exploration and evaluation assets	44,804	35,985	30,538	28,645	24,447
Net assets	64,730	45,221	35,983	39,637	47,891
Total assets	66,803	47,514	38,215	42,019	48,988
Capital stock	118,054	95,290	83,758	87,084	81,151
Dividends declared per share	-	-	-	-	-

#### *Canadian/U.S. Dollar Exchange Rates*

In this Annual Report, unless otherwise specified, all dollar amounts are expressed in Canadian dollars (CDN\$).

Table No. 2 sets forth the exchange rate for the Canadian dollars at the end of the five most recent fiscal periods ended at December 31<sup>st</sup>, the average rates for the period, the range of high and low rates and the close for the period. Table No. 3 sets forth the range of high and low rates for each month during the previous six months. For purposes of this table, the rate of exchange means the noon buying rate in New York City for cable transfers in foreign currencies as certified for customs purposes by the Federal Reserve Bank of New York. The table sets forth the number of Canadian Dollars required under that formula to buy one U.S. Dollar. The average rate means the average of the exchange rates on the last day of each month during the period.

**Table No. 2****Canadian Dollar/U.S. Dollar Exchange Rates for Five Most Recent Financial Years**

	Average	High	Low	Close
Fiscal Year Ended 12/31/2017	\$ 1.30	\$1.37	\$1.21	\$1.25
Fiscal Year Ended 12/31/2016	1.32	1.46	1.25	1.34
Fiscal Year Ended 12/31/2015	1.28	1.40	1.17	1.38
Fiscal Year Ended 12/31/2014	1.10	1.16	1.06	1.16
Fiscal Year Ended 12/31/2013	1.03	1.07	0.98	1.06

**Table No. 3****Canadian Dollar/U.S. Dollar Exchange Rates for Previous Six Months**

	September 2017	October 2017	November 2017	December 2017	January 2018	February 2018
High	\$ 1.25	\$ 1.29	\$ 1.29	\$ 1.29	\$ 1.25	\$ 1.28
Low	1.21	1.25	1.27	1.25	1.23	1.23

**The exchange rate was CDN\$1.29/US\$1.00 on March 28, 2018.**

***Risk Factors*****General Risk Factors Attendant to Resource Exploration and Development**

Resource exploration and development is a speculative business, characterized by a number of significant risks including, among other things, unprofitable efforts resulting not only from the failure to discover mineral deposits but from finding mineral deposits which, though present, are insufficient in quantity and quality to return a profit from

production. The marketability of minerals acquired or discovered by the Company may be affected by numerous factors which are beyond the control of the Company and which cannot be accurately predicted, such as market fluctuations, the proximity and capacity of milling facilities, mineral markets and processing equipment, and such other factors as government regulations, including regulations relating to royalties, allowable production, importing and exporting of minerals, and environment protection, the combination of which factors may result in the Company not receiving an adequate return on investment capital.

Presently, the Company is in the exploration and development stage and there is no assurance that a commercially viable ore deposit (a reserve) exists in any of its properties or prospects until further work is done and a comprehensive economic evaluation based upon that work is concluded. The Company has financed its operations principally through the sale of equity securities, entering into joint venture arrangements and the sale of its inventory of gold. The recoverability of mineral properties is dependent on the establishment of economically recoverable reserves, the ability of the Company to obtain the necessary financing to complete development and ultimately upon future profitable production or the realization of proceeds from the disposition of the properties.

#### **Uncertainty in Discovering Commercially Mineable Ore Deposits**

There is no certainty that the expenditures to be made by the Company in the exploration of its properties as described herein will result in discoveries of mineralized material in commercial quantities. Most exploration projects do not result in the discovery of commercially mineable ore deposits and no assurance can be given that any particular level of recovery of ore reserves will in fact be realized or that any identified mineral deposit will ever qualify as a commercially mineable (or viable) ore body which can be legally and economically exploited. Estimates of reserves, mineral deposits and production costs can also be affected by such factors as environmental permitting regulations and requirements, weather, environmental factors, unforeseen technical difficulties, unusual or unexpected geological formations and work interruptions. In addition, the grade of ore ultimately mined may differ from that indicated by drilling results. Short term factors relating to ore reserves, such as the need for orderly development of ore bodies or the processing of new or different grades, may also have an adverse effect on mining operations and on the results of operations. There can be no assurance that minerals recovered in small-scale tests will be duplicated in large-scale tests under on-site conditions or in production scale. Material changes in ore reserves, grades, stripping ratios or recovery rates may affect the economic viability of any project.

### **History of Net Losses, Lack of Cash Flow and Assurance of Profitability**

The Company had net losses in a number of years since its date of incorporation. Due to the nature of the Company's business, there can be no assurance that the Company will be profitable. The Company had net losses of \$5,231,295 in Fiscal 2017, \$4,023,504 in Fiscal 2016, and \$1,144,525 in Fiscal 2015.

The Company currently has no revenues from operations as all of its properties and prospects are in the exploration stage. There is no assurance that the Company will receive revenues from operations at any time in the near future. During Fiscal 2017, 2016 and Fiscal 2015, the Company earned interest income and other income from Administrative service fees charged to Almadex Minerals Limited ("Almadex").

The Company has not paid dividends on its shares since incorporation and the Company does not anticipate doing so in the foreseeable future.

### **Uncertainty of Obtaining Additional Funding Requirements**

If the Company's exploration and development programs are successful, additional capital will be required for the further development of an economic ore body and to place it in commercial production. The only material sources of future funds presently available to the Company are the sale of its equity capital, the incurring of debt, or the offering by the Company of an interest in its properties and prospects to be earned by another party or parties carrying out further development thereof.

Failure to obtain additional financing on a timely basis could cause the Company to forfeit its interest in such properties, dilute its interests in the properties and/or reduce or terminate its operations.

### **Possible Dilution to Present and Prospective Shareholders**

The Company's plan of operation, in part, contemplates the financing of the conduct of its business by the issuance, for cash, of equity securities of the Company or incurring debt, or a combination of the two. Any transaction involving the issuance of previously authorized but unissued shares of common stock, or securities convertible into common stock, would result in dilution, possibly substantial, to present and prospective holders of common stock. The Company could also seek joint venture partners or funding sources such as royalties or streaming transactions. These approaches would dilute the Company's interest in properties it has acquired.

### **Mineral Prices May Not Support Corporate Profit**

The mining industry in general is intensely competitive and there is no assurance that, even if commercial quantities of mineral resources are developed, a profitable market will exist for the sale of same. Factors beyond the control of the Company may affect the marketability of any substances discovered. The price of minerals is volatile over short periods of time, and is affected by numerous factors beyond the control of the Company, including international economic and political trends, expectations of inflation, currency exchange fluctuations, interest rates and global or regional consumption patterns, speculative activities and increased production due to improved mining techniques. Material changes in mineral prices may affect the economic viability of any project.

### **Environmental Regulations**

The current and anticipated future operations of the Company, including development activities and commencement of production on its properties, require permits from various federal, territorial and local governmental authorities and such operations are and will be governed by laws and regulations governing prospecting, development, mining, production, exports, taxes, labor standards, occupational health, waste disposal, toxic substances, land use, environmental protection, mine safety and other matters. Companies engaged in the development and operation of mines and related facilities generally experience increased costs, and delays in production and other schedules as a result of the need to comply with applicable laws, regulations and permits. Such operations and exploration activities are also subject to substantial regulation under these laws by governmental agencies and may require that the Company obtain permits from various governmental agencies. The Company believes it is in substantial compliance with all material laws and regulations which currently apply to its activities. There can be no assurance, however, that all permits which the Company may require for construction of mining facilities and conduct of mining operations will be obtainable on reasonable terms or that such laws and regulations, or that new legislation or modifications to existing legislation, would not have an adverse effect on any exploration or mining project which the Company might undertake.



Failure to comply with applicable laws, regulations and permitting requirements may result in enforcement actions thereunder, including orders issued by regulatory or judicial authorities causing operations to cease or be curtailed, and may include corrective measures requiring capital expenditures, installation of additional equipment or remedial actions. Parties engaged in exploration and mining operations may be required to compensate those suffering loss or damage by reason of the mining activities and may have civil or criminal fines or penalties imposed for violation of applicable laws or regulations.

The enactment of new laws or amendments to current laws, regulations and permits governing operations and activities of mining companies, or more stringent implementation thereof, could have a material adverse impact on the Company and cause increases in capital expenditures or production costs or reduction in levels of production at producing properties or require abandonment or delays in development of new mining properties.

### **Environmental**

The Company's exploration and development activities are subject to extensive laws and regulations governing environment protection. The Company is also subject to various reclamation-related conditions. Although the Company closely follows and believes it is operating in compliance with all applicable environmental regulations, there can be no assurance that all future requirements will be obtainable on reasonable terms. Failure to comply may result in enforcement actions causing operations to cease or be curtailed and may include corrective measures requiring capital expenditures. Intense lobbying over environmental concerns by NGOs opposed to mining has caused some governments to cancel or restrict development of mining projects. Current publicized concern over climate change may lead to carbon taxes, requirements for carbon offset purchases or new regulation. The costs or likelihood of such potential issues to the Company cannot be estimated at this time.

### **No Guarantee of Title to Mineral Properties**

While the Company has investigated title to all of its mineral properties and prospects, and, to the best of its knowledge, title to all of its properties and prospects in which it has the right to acquire or earn an interest are in good standing as of the date of this Annual Report, this should not be construed as a guarantee of title. The properties and prospects may be subject to prior unregistered agreements or transfers unknown to the Company and title may be affected by undetected defects, e.g. defects in staking or acquisition process.

If title is disputed, the Company will have to defend its ownership through the courts, which would likely be an expensive and protracted process and have a negative effect on the Company's operations and financial condition. In the event of an adverse judgment, the Company could lose its property rights.

### **Volatility of Share Price**

Market prices for shares of early stage companies are often volatile. Factors such as announcements of mineral discoveries, exploration and financial results, and other factors could have a significant effect on the price of the Company's shares.

**Material Risk of Dilution Presented by Large Number of Outstanding Share Purchase Options and Warrants**

As of March 28, 2018, there were share purchase options outstanding allowing the holders of these options to purchase 9,590,000 shares of common stock and warrants allowing the holders of these warrants to purchase 8,132,262 shares of common stock. Directors and officers of the Company hold 8,112,000 of these share purchase options and 50,000 of these warrants. An additional 1,478,000 share purchase options are held by employees and consultants of the Company. Given the fact that as of March 28, 2018 there were 102,199,625 shares of common stock outstanding, the exercise of all of the existing share purchase options and warrants would result in dilution to the existing shareholders and could depress the price of the Company's shares. The exercise of all outstanding share purchase options and warrants would cause the number of issued and outstanding common shares to rise 15%.

### **No Proven Reserves**

The properties and prospects in which the Company has an interest or the properties in which the Company has the right to earn an interest are in the exploration and development stage only, are without a known body of economically viable ore and are not in commercial production. If the Company does not ultimately find a body of economically recoverable ore, it would either have to acquire additional exploration projects, or terminate its operations.

### **Uncertainty of Reserves and Mineralization Estimates**

There are numerous uncertainties inherent in estimating proven and probable reserves and mineralization, including many factors beyond the control of the Company. The estimation of reserves and mineralization is a subjective process and the accuracy of any such estimates is a function of the quality of available data and of engineering and geological interpretation and judgment. Results of drilling, metallurgical testing and production and the evaluation of mine plans subsequent to the date of any estimate may justify revision of such estimates. No assurances can be given that the volume and grade of reserves recovered and rates of production will not be less than anticipated. Assumptions about prices are subject to greater uncertainty and metals prices have fluctuated widely in the past. Declines in the market price of base or precious metals also may render reserves or mineralization containing relatively lower grades of ore uneconomic to exploit. Changes in operating and capital costs and other factors including, but not limited to, short-term operating factors such as the need for sequential development of ore bodies and the processing of new or different ore grades, may materially and adversely affect reserves.

### **Changes to Mexican Mining Taxes**

In October 2013, the Mexican Congress approved a package of tax reforms which included significant changes to the country's mining royalties and tax structure. These new laws had an effective date of January 1, 2014. The changes include a 7.5% special mining royalty on earnings before interest, taxes, depreciation and amortization ("EBITDA") and an additional 0.5% royalty on gross revenues from precious metal production. The new law also increases annual taxes on certain inactive exploration concessions by 50% to 100%. These changes may result in increased holding costs to the Company for its existing mineral concessions. The new taxes and royalties may also materially and adversely affect the potential to define economic reserves on any Mexican properties and result in the Company's Mexican properties being less attractive to potential optionees or joint-venture partners.

### **Foreign Incorporation and Civil Liabilities**

The Company was created under amalgamation under the laws of the Province of British Columbia, Canada. All of the Company's directors and officers are residents of Canada and all of the Company's assets and its subsidiaries are located outside the U.S. Consequently, it may be difficult for U.S. investors to affect service of process in the U.S. upon those directors and officers who are not residents of the U.S., or to realize in the U.S. upon judgments of U.S. courts predicated upon civil liabilities under applicable U.S. laws.

### **Conflict of Interest**

Some of the Company's directors and officers are directors and officers of other natural resource or mining-related companies. Duane Poliquin, Morgan Poliquin, John McCleary, Mark Brown, William Worrall, Douglas McDonald, and Korm Trieu also serve as directors and/or officers of Almadex Minerals Limited. Gerald Carlson also serves a director and as the President and CEO of Pacific Ridge Exploration Ltd. and director of New Point Exploration Corp. Mark Brown also serves as the President, CEO and director of Big Sky Petroleum Corporation, and Mountain Boy Minerals Ltd. He also serves as Executive Chairman of Alianza Minerals Ltd., and director and/or officer of Avrupa Minerals Ltd., Strategem Capital Corp., Paget Minerals Corp, Sutter Gold Mining Ltd., Affinor Growers Ltd., Redstar Gold Corp., Orestone Mining Corp. and Adamera Minerals Corp. David Strang also serves as a director, CEO and President of Ero Copper Corporation. Elaine Ellingham also serves as a director of Aurania Resources Ltd. And Wallbridge Mining Company Ltd. These associations may give rise from time to time to conflicts of interest, as a result of which, the Company may miss the opportunity to participate in certain transactions.

### **Foreign Operations**

The Company currently has exploration projects located in Mexico. The Company's foreign activities are subject to the risk normally associated with conducting business in foreign countries, including exchange controls and currency fluctuations, foreign taxation, laws or policies of particular countries, labor practices and disputes, and uncertain political and economic environments, as well as risks of war and civil disturbances, or other risk that could cause exploration or development difficulties or stoppages, restrict the movement of funds or result in the deprivation or loss of contract rights or the taking of property by nationalization or expropriation without fair compensation. Foreign operations could also be adversely impacted by laws and policies of the U.S. affecting foreign trade, investment and taxation.

### **Foreign Currency Fluctuations**

At the present time, some of the Company's activities are carried on outside of Canada. Accordingly, it is subject to risks associated with fluctuations of the rate of exchange between the Canadian dollar and foreign currencies.

The Company is currently not engaged in currency hedging to offset any risk of exchange rate fluctuation and currently has no plans to engage in currency hedging.

### **Operating Hazards and Risks Associated with the Mining Industry**

Mining operations generally involve a high degree of risk, which even a combination of experience, knowledge and careful evaluation may not be able to overcome. Hazards such as unusual or unexpected geological formations and other conditions are involved. Operations in which the Company has a direct or indirect interest will be subject to all the hazards and risks normally incidental to exploration, development and production of minerals, any of which could result in work stoppages, damage to or destruction of mines and other producing facilities, damage to or loss of life and property, environmental damage and possible legal liability for any or all damage or loss. The Company may become subject to liability for cave-ins and other hazards for which it cannot insure or against which it may elect not to insure where premium costs are disproportionate to the Company's perception of the relevant risks. The payment of such insurance premiums and the incurring of such liabilities would reduce the funds available for exploration activities.

### **The Ability to Manage Growth**

Should the Company be successful in its efforts to develop its mineral properties or to raise capital for such development or for the development of other mining ventures it will experience significant growth in operations. If this occurs management anticipates that additional expansion will be required in order to continue development. Any expansion of the Company's business would place further demands on its management, operational capacity and financial resources. The Company anticipates that it will need to recruit qualified personnel in all areas of its operations. There can be no assurance that the Company will be effective in retaining its current personnel or attracting and retaining additional qualified personnel, expanding its operational capacity or otherwise managing growth. The failure to manage growth effectively could have a material adverse effect on the Company's business, financial condition and results of operations.

### **Lack of a Dividend Policy**

The Company does not intend to pay cash dividends in the foreseeable future, as any earnings are expected to be retained for use in developing and expanding its business. However, the actual amount of dividends which the Company may pay will remain subject to the discretion of the Company's Board of Directors and will depend on results of operations, cash requirements and future prospects of the Company and other factors.

### **Competition**

There is competition from other mining exploration companies with operations similar to those of the Company's. Many of the mining companies with which the Company competes have operations and financial strength many times greater than that of the Company. Such competitors could outbid the Company for such projects, equipment or personnel, or produce minerals at a lower cost which would have a negative effect on the Company's operations and financial condition.

### **Dependence on Key Personnel**

The Company depends highly on the business and technical expertise of its management and key personnel, in particular, Duane Poliquin and Morgan Poliquin. There is little possibility that this dependence will decrease in the near term. As the Company's operations expand, additional general management resources may be required. The Company maintains no "Key Man" insurance coverage, and the loss or unavailability of any of its key personnel could have a negative effect on the Company's ability to operate effectively.

## **Cybersecurity Risks**

As is typical of modern businesses, the Company is reliant on the continuous and uninterrupted operation of its information technology (“IT”) systems. User access and security of all Company sites and IT systems can be critical elements to its operations, as is cloud security, security of all of the Company’s IT systems, and protection against cyber security incidents. Any IT failure pertaining to availability, access or system security could potentially result in disruption of the activities of the Company and its personnel, and could adversely affect the reputation, operations or financial performance of the Company.

Potential risks to the Company’s IT systems could include unauthorized attempts to extract business sensitive, confidential or personal information, denial of access extortion, corruption of information or disruption of business processes, or by inadvertent or intentional actions by the Company’s employees or vendors. A cybersecurity incident resulting in a security breach or failure to identify a security threat could disrupt business and could result in the loss of sensitive, confidential or personal information or other assets, as well as litigation, regulatory enforcement, violation of privacy or securities laws and regulations, and remediation costs, all of which could materially impact the Company’s business or reputation.

### **The Company could be deemed a passive foreign investment company which could have negative consequences for U.S. investors.**

The Company could be classified as a Passive Foreign Investment Company (“PFIC”) under the United States tax code. If the Company is declared a PFIC, then owners of the Company’s shares who are U.S. taxpayers generally will be required to treat any so-called “excess distribution” received on its shares, or any gain realized upon a disposition of shares, as ordinary income and to pay an interest charge on a portion of such distribution or gain, unless the taxpayer makes a qualified electing fund (“QEF”) election or a mark-to-market election with respect to the Company’s shares. A U.S. taxpayer who makes a QEF election generally must report on a current basis its share of the Company’s net capital gain and ordinary earnings for any year in which the Company is classified as a PFIC, whether or not the Company distributes any amounts to its shareholders.

## **Item 4. Information on the Company**

### **History and Development of the Company**

The head office of the Registrant (sometimes referred to in this Annual Report on Form 20-F as “Almaden” or the “Company”) is located at 1333 Johnston Street, Suite 210, Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada, V6H 3R9. The registered and records office of the Company is 1177 West Hastings Street, Suite 1710, Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada, V6E 2L3.

Edgar Filing: ALMADEN MINERALS LTD - Form 20-F

The contact persons are Duane Poliquin, Chairman and Morgan Poliquin, President. The telephone number is (604) 689-7644. The fax number is (604) 689-7645. The email address is info@almadenminerals.com. The web-site address is www.almadenminerals.com.

The Company was formed by amalgamation under the laws of the Province of British Columbia of its predecessor companies, Almaden Resources Corporation and Fairfield Minerals Ltd. on February 1, 2002. The Company operates under the *Business Corporations Act* (British Columbia).

Effective July 31, 2015, the Company effected a corporate reorganization pursuant to a statutory plan of arrangement (“Plan of Arrangement”) involving the Company’s then wholly owned subsidiary, Almadex Minerals Limited (“Almadex”), as described below.

The Company’s common shares began trading on The Toronto Stock Exchange (“TSX”) under the symbol “AMM” on February 11, 2002 and on the NYSE MKT, under the symbol “AAU” on December 19, 2005. Almaden Resources Corporation’s initial public offering on the Vancouver Stock Exchange was pursuant to a prospectus dated October 10, 1986. The shares of Fairfield Minerals Ltd. began trading on the Vancouver Stock Exchange on July 18, 1986 and on The Toronto Stock Exchange on May 21, 1990.

There have been no public takeover offers by third parties in respect of the Company’s shares and the Company has made no public takeover offers in respect of any other company’s shares.



## Organizational Structure

The Company currently has two wholly-owned subsidiaries that were formed to hold properties in their respective jurisdictions. These subsidiaries are:

<b>Subsidiaries</b>	<b>Jurisdiction</b>	<b>Nature of operations</b>
Puebla Holdings Inc.	Canada	holding company
Minera Gorrion, S.A. de C.V.	Mexico	exploration company

The Company formerly had an additional eight wholly-owned subsidiaries. However, during Fiscal 2015, these subsidiaries were spun out to Almadex as part of the Plan of Arrangement as described below. The eight formerly wholly-owned subsidiaries are:

<b>Former Subsidiaries</b>	<b>Jurisdiction</b>	<b>Nature of operations</b>
Almaden America Inc.	USA	exploration company
Republic Resources Ltd.	Canada	service company
Ixtaca Precious Metals Inc.	Canada	holding company
Pangeon Holdings Ltd.	Canada	holding company
Almaden de Mexico, S.A. de C.V.	Mexico	exploration company
Minera Gavilan, S.A. de C.V.	Mexico	exploration company
Compania Minera Zapata, S.A. de C.V.	Mexico	exploration company
Minera Alondra, S.A. de C.V.	Mexico	holding company

## Business of the Company

The Company is engaged in the business of the acquisition, exploration and when warranted, development of mineral properties. The Company currently has material property interests in Mexico. The Company's property interests are at the exploration and development stage. The Company has not generated any revenues from operations.

## Corporate Reorganization

The Company entered into an Arrangement Agreement dated May 11, 2015 involving the spinout, pursuant to a statutory Plan of Arrangement, of Almaden's early stage exploration projects, royalty interests and other non-core assets into a new public Company called Almadex, which trades on the TSX Venture Exchange under the symbol "AMZ" and the OTCQX marketplace under the symbol "AXDDF". Almadex would hold the following key assets:

- a 100% interest in the El Cobre

copper-gold porphyry exploration project in Mexico and the Willow copper-gold porphyry exploration project in Nevada, in addition to a portfolio of 20 other exploration projects, many of which are located in eastern Mexico in geological environments similar to the Company's Ixtaca and Caballo Blanco discoveries; a 2% NSR on the Company's Tuligtic property in Mexico, which

- hosts the Company's Ixtaca gold-silver development project; a 1.5% NSR on the Caballo Blanco gold deposit in Mexico, a
- development project operated by Timmins Gold Corp.;
- a 2% NSR on the Elk gold

deposit in  
Canada, an  
advanced  
exploration  
project  
operated by  
JDL Gold  
Corp.  
(formerly Gold  
Mountain  
Mining Corp.);  
a portfolio of  
21 additional  
NSRs on  
exploration  
projects in  
Mexico,  
Canada and  
•the United  
States  
identified  
through the  
Company's  
past prospect  
generator  
activities;  
equity  
holdings in  
•several  
publicly-listed  
companies;  
1,597 ounces  
•of gold  
bullion; and  
approximately  
•\$3 million in  
cash.

On July 31, 2015, all conditions to the statutory Plan of Arrangement regarding the spinout were satisfied or waived and the spinout was effective. Almaden's shareholders approved the Plan of Arrangement and exchanged their existing common shares of Almaden for one "new" Almaden common share and 0.6 common share of Almadex.

The Company has also entered into an Administrative Services Agreement with Almadex dated May 15, 2015, as amended by First Amending Agreement dated December 16, 2015 (the “Agreement”). Under the Agreement, the Company is the sole and exclusive manager of Almadex, and provides Almadex with general management services and day-to-day operation of Almadex. These services include:

- Office space;
- Executive personnel and human resources;
- Geological technical support;
- and Accounting and financial services.

Almadex compensates the Company 30% of the Company’s actual monthly cost of rent for any shared facilities, and 30% of any shared personnel’s fees and/or wages. Almadex pays the Company any reasonable fees or costs incurred on behalf of Almadex by the Company which were approved by Almadex.

The Agreement has an initial 5-year term, with subsequent automatic 1-year renewals unless terminated pursuant to the terms permitted under the Agreement. The Agreement includes a Change of Control clause. If either party is subject to a Change of Control during the term of the Agreement, the Agreement shall automatically terminate within 48 hours of the Change of Control unless agreed to in writing by both parties. The target of the Change of Control shall then pay the other party \$2 million as compensation for the unplanned termination of the Company’s engagement and significant disruption to the other party’s business. “Change of Control” means the date upon which, without the written concurrence of the target of the Change of Control, any person (as that term is defined in the *Securities Act* (British Columbia)) makes and does not withdraw a take-over bid (as that term is defined in the *Securities Act* (British Columbia)) or acquires, directly or indirectly, that number of common shares of the target which equals or exceeds twenty percent (20%) of the then issued common shares of the target.

### ***Business Overview***

#### Maintaining properties

The following is a general statement about government requirements for holding mineral properties in the jurisdictions where the Company currently holds material mineral property interests.

In Mexico, mining law is a federal matter. The government requires annual assessment work and expenditures per hectare which increase with the size and age of the claim. Under the tax reforms effective January 1, 2014, if a concession holder has not conducted exploration or exploitation activities during a two-year period, the concession holder would have to pay an additional 50% of the taxes payable per hectare if within the last 11 years, and an additional 100% of the taxes payable if after year 12. Land taxes per hectare also have to be paid by January 31 and July 31 each year. Both amounts are subject to inflation accounting and the inflation adjustment number for each fiscal period is published in the official gazette. Under the Mexican Constitution and the mining and environmental laws of Mexico, all mining projects are subject to Federal legal control. This control is exercised from the exploration phase through the closure phase of a mining project. Prior to the initiation of exploration activities, concession owners are required to file a notice of commencement of exploration activities in conformity with Mexican Official Norm 120 (NOM-120); prior to initiation of construction activities (and also in some more intrusive exploration activities), mining projects are required to apply for and obtain an environmental impact authorization and a land use permit from the Mexican Federal environmental agency SEMARNAT (Secretaria de Medio Ambiente y Recursos Naturales). This requires the presentation of an environmental impact manifest and a technical study which deals with the impacts, the environmental mitigation, and habitat compensation to the satisfaction of the authorities having environmental jurisdiction.

### Competition

The mineral property exploration and development business, in general, is intensively competitive and there is not any assurance that even if commercial quantities of ore are discovered, a ready market will exist for sale of same. Numerous factors beyond the Company's control may affect the marketability of any substances discovered. These factors include market fluctuations; the proximity and capacity of natural resource markets and processing equipment; and government regulations, including regulations relating to prices, taxes, royalties, land tenure, land use, importing and exporting of mineral and environmental protection. The exact effect of these factors cannot be accurately predicted, but the combination of these factors may make it difficult for the Company to receive an adequate return on investment.

The Company competes with many companies possessing greater financial resources and technical facilities for the acquisition of mineral concessions, claims, leases and other mineral interests as well as for the recruitment and retention of qualified employees.

### Seasonality

The Company's principal project is in central Mexico. In Mexico, the climate in the project area is marked by dry, cold winters and a distinct rainy season. The rainy season typically begins in May or June and continues until late September to October. In most years roads remain passable and exploration can be done throughout the rainy season. Seasonal changes do not have a material impact on the Company's exploration expenditures.

### Exploration Program Protocols

#### *General Sample Handling and Quality Control Program for Exploration Programs*

The Company employs a strict quality control program for samples taken during its exploration programs. For drilling programs a quality control program is in place which includes the insertion of blanks, field duplicates and certified standards into the sample stream.

#### Chain of Custody

Samples of rock and drill core and cuttings are sealed by the sampler and kept under control of a qualified person until they are shipped to a laboratory.

#### Sample Handling

Sample handling for drilling programs is described more fully below. Soil and stream sediment samplers have been trained to industry standard levels of sampling methodology. In general, the Company sieves stream sediment samples to -20 mesh in the field during preparation. Samplers are required to not wear any jewellery or clothing or use equipment which may contaminate the sample. All sample locations are geographically located at the time of sampling using the Global Positioning System. The Company has prepared standardized sample information cards for samplers to record information concerning the sample location, type and medium. Outcrop, float and dump rock samples are collected by geologists who record similarly ordered geologic information relating to the sample taken.

## Blanks

Blank material, a sample of crushed and pulverized rock, known to contain very low or non-detectable concentration of gold and silver, is inserted as a pulp into the sample stream on an interval of every 20 samples. Blanks are intended to detect possible contamination.

## Duplicates

During drill programs the Company routinely includes a field duplicate into the sample stream, spaced at 20 sample intervals. Field duplicate samples are splits of drill core or reverse circulation cuttings from the sample interval. The resulting two field duplicate samples are submitted with separate sample numbers “blind” to the assay lab and separately treated as normal samples. The samples are taken randomly with no regard to rock type, geographic position or degree of alteration or mineralization. These field duplicates are then used to detect the cumulative uncertainties associated with the entire sampling and analytical process.

## Standards

During drill programs the Company routinely includes a certified standard into the sample stream, spaced at 20 sample intervals. Certified standards are purchased from CDN Resource Laboratories of Langley, BC and are prepared by this professional third party lab according to industry standard and accepted methodologies. Standards are utilized to monitor the accuracy of the laboratory work.

## *Sample Handling for Drill Programs*

### Core Box Preparation

Plastic core boxes are used for the storage of core. Each box is labelled by the drillers at the rig with the drill-hole number, a box number and an arrow to mark the start of the tray and the down-hole direction. Wooden core blocks, with the meterage in black marker pen, are inserted by the drillers at the end of each core run (usually 3 m or less). These core run intervals are checked and recorded by the geologist during mark up (see below). When filled with core the boxes are sealed with a plastic lid by the drillers and transported to the core logging facility.

### Sample and Corebox Markup

Once at the core logging facility, the core boxes are marked up with the starting and ending meterage, written at the ends of the trays with a marker. The start and end of each selected sample interval is marked with a red wax pencil mark across the core and sample numbers are written on the edge of the core box channels at the start and end of each sample interval. Intervals denoting the position in the sample tag sequence of field duplicate, blank and analytical standards are also marked on the core box. A cut line was marked on the core as a guide for sawing of half-core samples for assay. The cut line position is marked by fitting the ends of the core together, to align them as they came out of the hole, and using a ruler to draw a line down the core axis with a red wax pencil. This mark-up is done after the trays are photographed. Cut line positions are selected by the logging geologist to produce two halves with equal proportions of mineralization. Typically this is done by marking the cut line down the long axis of the ellipses described by the intersection of the veins with the core circumference. Each tray is digitally photographed before core cutting and sampling.

### Core Logging

Before cutting and sampling the core, the following tables of data are entered into the Company drill hole database system:

### Geotechnical Logging

1. Core box record sheet: Beginning and end from/to intervals for each core box.
2. For each core run (from and to) a record of the core size, meters of core recovered for the interval, RQD (the total length of pieces of core in the interval that are twice the width of the core divided by the length of the interval, times 100) and hardness (on a scale from 1 to 10, from hardest to softest).



3. A drilling daily control sheet showing the progress of the rig for each shift.

### Geological Logging

1. **Geology Log:** Intervals selected by the geologist recording a detailed description of the lithology, texture, alteration, mineral assemblage and intensity and level of oxidation/weathering. Structural measurements (i.e. the angle of structures to the core axis) are also recorded. The cover sheet includes details such as surveyed collar co-ordinates, downhole survey data, core size depths, drilling dates and sample number series.

2. **Veining and Mineralization:** Estimates of the percent veining and the percentage of different minerals represented in either vein, breccia or disseminated form, i.e. quartz, carbonates, pyrite etc..

3. **Sample Sheet:** A record of the sample intervals, sample numbers and duplicate, blank and analytical standard numbers.

4. **Hole Summary:** An abbreviated hole log that summarizes the important features of a drill hole. A summary drill hole trace giving the geologist the opportunity to summarize the hole and sketch in structural orientations in a form easily transferred to sections. All logs are saved on the server along with the core photos and other data from each hole.

### Sample Interval Selection

All strongly altered or mineralized intervals of core were sampled. Sampling always began at least 5 samples above the start of mineralization. Sample intervals were selected using the following criteria.

- Maximum sample length of 2 m in unmineralized lithologies.
- Maximum sample length of 1 m in mineralized lithologies.
- Minimum sample length of 50 cm. Geological changes in the core such as major mineralization/alteration intensity and lithology changes were used as sample breaks.
- Core size changes and any zones of core loss were used as sample breaks.
- Large discrete veins that might possibly be modeled or mined as separate structures were sampled separately.

The begin/end marks were placed so that the entire vein ended up in the sample(s) and the vein is not smeared into samples on either side.

### Sampling Procedure

All samples were originally cut in half using custom-made, gasoline engine-powered diamond core saws. All were recently changed to electric powered saws. Each saw has sliding trays and customized “core cradles” sized for each core diameter in order to ensure a straight cut down the cut line and to minimize the loss of friable core during cutting. Areas of very soft rock (e.g. fault gouge), are cut with a machete, using the side of the core channel to ensure a straight cut. Areas of very broken core (pieces <1 cm) were sampled using spoons. The following standard sampling procedures were employed:

The right hand side of the core (looking down the hole) was always sampled. After cutting, half the core was placed in a new plastic sample bag and half was placed back in the core box. Between each sample, the core saw and sampling table areas were washed to ensure no contamination between samples. Field duplicate, blank and analytical standards were added into the sample sequence as they were being cut. After cutting of samples containing visible gold, a piece of abrasive quartz sandstone was cut to clean the diamond blade. This was done to prevent contamination of the following sample with gold that may have become smeared onto the blade.

Sample numbers were written on the outside of the sample bags twice and the tag from the sample book was placed inside the bag with the half core. The bags were sealed using single-use plastic cable ties.

Sample numbers on the bags were checked against the numbers on the core box and the sample book.

The core cutting area is within the core logging shed and the logging geologists regularly checked the precision of the core cutting and sampling. The sealed plastic sample bags were placed in large plastic twine (rice) sacks (usually between 8 and 10 samples per sack) and sealed using single-use plastic cable ties. The sacks were weighed and the sack number, sample numbers, sack weight and date written on the outside of the sacks.

## **Company's Principal Properties**

The Tuligtic Project, which hosts the Company's Ixtaca discovery, is the only project material to the Company. The Tuligtic Project is located in Puebla State, Mexico.

### ***PRINCIPAL PROPERTY INTERESTS***

#### **The Tuligtic Property/Project – Mexico**

##### ***Location and Access***

The Ixtaca deposit, the epithermal gold-silver target within the Tuligtic Property, is located 8 km northwest of the town of San Francisco Ixtacamaxtitlán, the county seat of the municipality of Ixtacamaxtitlán, Puebla State. The project is accessible by driving 40 km east along Highway 119 from Apizaco, an industrial center located approximately 50 km north of Puebla City by two-lane Highway, and then north approximately 2 km along a paved road to the town of Santa Maria. The trip from Apizaco to site can be driven in approximately 1.5 hours. There is also access to the Property using gravel roads from the northeast via Tezhuitan and Cuyoaco, from the south via Libres and from the northwest via Chignahuapan. The Xicohtencatl Industrial complex lies 30 km southwest by paved road from the Tuligtic Project, and houses agricultural, chemical, biomedical and industrial manufacturing facilities and is serviced by rail. Puebla, the fourth largest city in Mexico has a population in excess of 4 million people, and includes one of the largest Volkswagen automotive plants outside Germany.

The Topography on the Tuligtic Project is generally moderate to steep hills with incised stream drainages. Elevation ranges from 2,300 meters (m) above sea level in the south to 2,800 m in the north. Vegetation is dominantly cactus and pines and the general area is also somewhat cultivated with subsistence vegetables, bean and corn crops. The Ixtaca Zone exploration area has been previously cleared and logged. The region has a temperate climate with average temperatures ranging from 19°C in June to 10°C in December. The area experiences about 600 mm of precipitation annually with the majority falling during the rainy season, between June and September. Exploration can be conducted year round within the Property. Electricity is available on the Property as the national electricity grid services nearby towns such as Santa Maria and Zacatepec. Water for exploration is available from year-round natural springs located at higher elevations above and upstream of the Ixtaca deposit. The surface rights locally are privately owned and where Almaden is exploring the Company has negotiated surface land use agreements with surface rights landowners.

***Claims and Title***

The Tuligtic property was staked by the Company in 2001, following the identification of surficial clay deposits that were interpreted to represent high-level epithermal alteration. The property originally consisted of approximately 14,000 hectares, but during 2015 Almaden filed an application to reduce the aggregate claim size at Tuligtic to those areas still considered prospective. The property is held 100% by Minera Gorrion S.A. de C.V., a subsidiary of Almaden Minerals Ltd. through the holding company, Puebla Holdings Inc. Claim details are summarized below.

<b>Claim Name</b>	<b>Claim Number</b>	<b>Area (hectares)</b>	<b>Valid Until Date</b>
Cerro Grande R1	245486	2,773.00	March 5, 2053
Cerro Grande R3	245488	824.06	March 5, 2053
Cerro Grande R4	245489	540.00	March 5, 2053
Cerro Grande R5	245490	784.97	March 5, 2053
Cerro Grande R6	245491	937.79	March 5, 2053
Cerro Grande 2 R2	245493	652.00	February 23, 2059
Cerro Grande 2 R3	245494	708.00	February 23, 2059
<b>Total</b>		<b>7,219.82</b>	

To maintain a claim in good standing, the holder is required to meet annual exploration or exploitation expenditure requirements. Currently, the property is subject to expenditure requirements of C\$1.3 million per year. However, the Company has substantial historic expenditures which can be used to offset the annual requirements.

***Geological Setting of the Tuligtic Project and Ixtaca Zone***

Within the Tuligtic Project, argillaceous limestone of the Late Jurassic to Early Cretaceous Upper Tamaulipas formation is underlain by transitional calcareous clastic rocks including siltstone, grainstone, mudstone, and calcareous shale. During the Laramide orogeny the carbonate package was intensely deformed into a series of thrust-related east verging anticlines. Calcareous shale units appear to occupy the cores of the anticlines while the thick bedded limestone/mudstone units occupy the cores of major synclines at the Ixtaca Zone. These carbonate basement units are crosscut by intensely altered intermediate composition dykes in the Tertiary. The deformed Mesozoic sedimentary sequence is discordantly overlain by epithermal altered Cenozoic bedded crystal tuff of the upper Coyoltepec subunit. The Coyoltepec volcanics are locally oxidized and weathered near surface and along structures.

Two styles of alteration and mineralization have been identified in the area: (1) copper-molybdenum porphyry style alteration and mineralization hosted by diorite and quartz-diorite intrusions; (2) silver-gold low-sulphidation epithermal quartz-bladed calcite veins hosted primarily by carbonate rocks and spatially associated with overlying volcanic hosted texturally destructive clay alteration and replacement silicification.

Outcropping porphyry-style alteration and mineralization is observed in the bottoms of several drainages where the altered intrusive complex is exposed in erosional windows beneath post mineral unconsolidated ash deposits. Multiple

late and post mineral intrusive phases have been identified crossing an early intensely altered and quartz-veined medium-grained feldspar phyric diorite named the Principal Porphyry. Other intrusive types include late and post mineral mafic dykes and an inter-mineral feldspar-quartz phyric diorite. Late mineral mafic dykes are fine grained and altered to chlorite with accessory pyrite. Calc-silicate (garnet-clinopyroxene) altered limestone occurs in proximity to the intrusive contacts and is crosscut by late quartz-pyrite veins. Early biotite alteration of the principal porphyry consists of biotite-orthoclase flooding of the groundmass. Quartz veins associated with early alteration have irregular boundaries and are interpreted to be representative of A-style porphyry veins. These are followed by molybdenite veins which are associated with the same wall rock alteration. Chalcopyrite appears late in the early alteration sequence. Late alteration is characterized by intense zones of muscovite-illite-pyrite overprinting earlier quartz-K-feldspar-pyrite  $\pm$  chalcopyrite veining and replacing earlier hydrothermal orthoclase and biotite. Stockwork quartz-pyrite crosscuts the A-style veins and is associated with muscovite-illite alteration of biotite. The quartz-sericite alteration can be texturally destructive resulting in white friable quartz veined and pyrite rich rock. Pyrite is observed replacing chalcopyrite and in some instances chalcopyrite remains only as inclusions within late stage pyrite grains.

Epithermal mineralization on the Tuligtic property is considered to have no genetic relationship to the porphyry alteration and mineralization described above. The epithermal system is unoxidised and well preserved, and there is evidence of a paleosurface as steam heated kaolinite and replacement silica alteration occur at higher elevations where the upper part of the Coyoltepec pyroclastic deposit is preserved. The veining of Ixtaca epithermal system displays characteristics representative of intermediate and low sulphidation deposits. These include typical ore and gangue mineralogy (electrum, sphalerite, galena, adularia, carbonates), mineralization dominantly in open space veins (colloform banding, cavity filling).

Mineralized hydrothermal breccias showing multiphase development are commonly encountered within the main veins. Hydrothermal silicic/carbonate breccia zones occur within the limestone and dip steeply. These breccias are dominantly controlled by the main faults.

The Upper Tamaulipas formation, the dykes that crosscut it and the upper Coyoltepec volcanic subunit are the main host rocks to the epithermal vein system at Ixtaca. In the Main and Ixtaca North zones veining strikes dominantly ENE-WNW (060 degrees) parallel to a major dyke trend and at a very high angle to the N to NNW bedding and fold structures within the limestones. The veins of the Chemalaco Zone are hosted by the shaley carbonate units and strike to the NNW, dipping to the SSW. In the footwall to Chemalaco Zone a parallel dyke has been identified which is altered and mineralized. The Chemalaco Zone and the dyke are interpreted to strike parallel to bedding and to core an antiform comprised of calcareous shale.

Studies of mineral assemblages in hand specimen, transmitted and reflected light microscopy and SEM analyses were carried out in order to construct a paragenetic sequence of mineral formation. This work revealed that veining occurred in three main stages. The first stage is barren calcite veining. This is followed by buff brown and pink colloform carbonate and silicate veins containing abundant silver minerals and lower gold. The third stage of veining contains both gold and silver mineralization. The dominant gold-bearing mineral is electrum, with varying Au:Ag ratios. The majority of grains contain 40-60 wt (weight) % gold but a few have down to 20 wt% (Staffurth, 2012). Gold content occasionally varies within electrum grains, and some larger grains seem to be composed of aggregates of several smaller grains of differing composition (Staffurth, 2012). Electrum often appears to have been deposited with late galena-clausthalite both of which are found as inclusions or in fractures in pyrite. It is also closely associated with silver minerals such as uytenbogaardtite ( $\text{Ag}_3\text{AuS}_2$ ). This mineral is associated with electrum, chalcopyrite, galena, alabandite, silver minerals and quartz in stage three mineralization. Apart from electrum, the dominant silver bearing minerals are polybasite (-pearceite) and argentian tetrahedrite plus minor acanthite-naumannite, pyrargyrite and stephanite. They are associated with sulphides or are isolated in gangue minerals.

The vein-related mineralization at Ixtaca does not have hard geologic boundaries. The mineralized zones are essentially vein zones, the outer boundaries of which are grade boundaries associated with decreased vein density.

### *History of Past Work*

To the Company's knowledge, no modern exploration was carried out on the project prior to Almaden's acquisition of the property area by staking in 2001. Evidence of historic mining of clay (kaolinite) deposits from surface is evident throughout the property area. Almaden acquired the initial claims of the Tuligtic Project in 2001 following the identification of surficial clay deposits that were interpreted to represent high-level epithermal alteration. Subsequent geologic mapping, rock, stream silt, soil sampling and induced polarization (IP) geophysical surveys identified porphyry copper and epithermal gold targets within an approximately 5 x 5 km area of intensely altered rock.

On May 9, 2002 Almaden entered into a joint venture agreement with BHP Billiton World Exploration Inc. (BHP) to undertake exploration in eastern Mexico. Initial helicopter-borne reconnaissance programs were completed in May 2003 and March 2004 on select targets within the joint venture area of interest. The work resulted in the acquisition of five (5) separate properties, in addition to the previously acquired Cerro Grande of the present day Tuligtic Property. Following a review of the initial exploration data, effective January 20, 2005, BHP relinquished its interest in the six properties to Almaden. The joint venture was terminated in 2006.



Later in 2006, the Tuligtic project was optioned to Pinnacle Mines Ltd. In 2007 this option agreement was terminated. In 2009 the property was optioned to Antofagasta Minerals S.A. under terms whereby it could earn a 75% interest in the property. In 2009 and 2010 Antofagasta Minerals S.A., under Almaden operation, conducted a geophysical and exploration drilling program on the copper porphyry area of the project. The program consisted of three lines of IP geophysics and 2,522 meters of diamond drilling in six holes. The IP chargeability results, along with that of previous programs carried out by Almaden, defined a 2 by 2.5 kilometer chargeability high the limits of which are currently only defined to the west and south. The drilling intersected skarn and porphyry copper-molybdenum mineralization in an intrusive complex. Four of the six drill holes were oriented within thirty degrees of north south and located within a 200 by 300 meter area roughly in the central portion of the IP chargeability anomaly. These holes were selected based on intensely altered and quartz-veined porphyry exposed in the drainages in the central portion of the chargeability anomaly. The drilling program encountered sub economic porphyry mineralization. The mineralized intersections, despite being largely in skarn and uneconomic, are considered by the Company to be encouraging for the greater porphyry potential of the system. Antofagasta Minerals S.A. terminated its option on the project in March 2010.

In July 2010 Almaden initiated a diamond drilling program on the gold-silver epithermal vein target area of the project located roughly 1 kilometer to the south of the porphyry prospect on the project. The first hole in this program (results announced in August 2010) intersected a zone of banded carbonate-quartz epithermal veining with gold and silver values. This hole constitutes the discovery of the Ixtaca Zone of veining. The entire hole cut through a vein zone of varying intensity of veining and intersected 302.41m of 1.01 g/t Au & 48 g/t Ag. Within this broad zone of veining several higher grade veins were intersected including 44.35 meters of 2.77 g/t Au and 117.7 g/t Ag. Immediately after this discovery the Company initiated a follow-up drill program. Between 2010 and 2013, Almaden's exploration at the Ixtaca Zone of the Tuligtic Property included geologic mapping and prospecting, alteration mineralogic characterization, rock and soil geochemical sampling, ground magnetics, IP and resistivity, Controlled Source Audio-frequency Magnetotelluric (CSAMT), and Controlled Source Induced Polarization (CSIP) geophysical surveys resulting in the identification of several anomalous zones.

### ***Present Condition of Project***

### **Geology and Mineral Resources**

The Tuligtic Property covers a roughly 5 by 5 kilometre area of high level epithermal alteration characterised by intense kaolinite-alunite alteration and silicification in volcanic rocks. This alteration is interpreted to represent the upper portion of a well preserved epithermal system. The epithermal system is hosted by both volcanic rocks and older carbonate units. Minor disseminated and vein mineralisation is hosted by the volcanic rocks (referred to as tuff, ash and volcanics). The bulk of the deposit is hosted by the carbonate units as vein swarms.

The Ixtaca deposit is a low sulphidation epithermal vein system. Most of the gold silver mineralisation occurs as zones of high grade vein and veinlets (vein swarms) in the carbonate basement units. A small portion of the gold silver mineralisation occurs above the unconformity as disseminated mineralisation in the altered volcanic rocks. The mineralisation is not oxidised and is hosted by classic banded and colloform low-sulphidation style carbonate-quartz veining. To date two main vein orientations have been identified in the Ixtaca deposit:

060  
degrees  
trending  
•sheeted  
veins  
hosted by  
limestone;  
330  
degrees  
•trending  
•veins  
hosted by  
shale;

On January 31, 2013, the Company announced a maiden resource on the Ixtaca Zone. Subsequent drilling focused on expanding and infilling the known resource base for the Preliminary Economic Assessment (PEA) which utilised the NI 43-101 Compliant Updated Mineral Resource Estimate released January 22, 2014. The data available for the maiden resource estimation consisted of 423 drill holes assayed for gold and silver. The estimate was constrained by three dimensional solids representing different lithologic and mineralized domains. Of the total drill holes 400 intersected the mineralized solids and were used to make the resource estimate. Capping was completed to reduce the effect of outliers within each domain.

### Amended Preliminary Economic Assessment

On January 22, 2016, Almaden filed a NI 43-101 Technical Report titled "Preliminary Economic Assessment of the Ixtaca Project", which provided further detail to its December 9, 2015 press release summarizing the results of integrating the optioned Rock Creek Mill and a smaller, higher grade, payback focused pit on potential mine economics. Almaden subsequently filed an amended technical report on SEDAR on April 13, 2016 (the "Amended PEA"), however the amendments were not material changes and the Report's data, inputs, interpretation, conclusions and results all remained unchanged.

The Amended PEA followed the historical PEAs released in 2014 and 2015 ("Historical PEAs") which evaluated larger throughput development alternatives. The primary reasons for providing an update to the Historical PEAs were to show the impact of significantly reduced initial capital cost on project economics and, given the significant decrease in precious metals prices, to demonstrate the viability of a mine plan which focused on the near surface high grade limestone hosted portions of the Ixtaca Zone deposit.

This mine plan was a smaller higher grade scenario than those described in Almaden's Historical PEA studies. In addition, the Amended PEA incorporated the optioned Rock Creek mill as well as results from various engineering studies related to the project which had been conducted since the Historical PEAs were completed. The Amended PEA incorporated:

- The same resource
- model as the Historical PEAs;
- The Rock Creek Mill, which was optioned by the Company in October 2015, with average throughput of 7,500 tonnes per day;
- A smaller, near surface and payback focussed pit;

A mine  
 production  
 schedule  
 • which targets  
 higher grades  
 earlier;  
 Optimised  
 waste  
 • placement  
 and tailings  
 management  
 facilities;  
 A 2% NSR  
 held by  
 • Almadex  
 Minerals  
 Limited.

### Rock Creek Mill

Subsequent to the issuance of the Updated Mineral Resource Estimate, Almaden entered into an option agreement to acquire the Rock Creek Mill in October 2015. Rock Creek is a completed mill located outside of Nome, Alaska which only operated for several months before its owner suspended its mining operation in 2008. The mill has been kept in excellent condition on care on maintenance.

The mill was built to process 7,000 tonnes per day. It includes a three-stage crushing plant, gravity circuit, ball mill, floatation cells and leaching facilities. Also included in the option agreement are conveyors, metallurgical and chemical fire assay laboratories, a water treatment plant, full electrical circuitry and generators, and spare parts.

Under the option agreement, Almaden has the exclusive right and option to purchase the Mill and related assets for a total of US\$6,500,000, subject to adjustment under certain circumstances, under the following terms:

On execution of agreement	US\$250,000	Paid
On or before December 31, 2015	US\$250,000	Paid
On or before March 31, 2016	US\$250,000	Paid
On or before June 15, 2017	US\$2,000,000	Paid
On or before June 15, 2018	US\$3,750,000	

In addition to the cash payments, Almaden also issued to the optionor 407,997 Almaden common shares valued at \$273,358 upon receipt of regulatory approval, which were issued on November 25, 2016.

The Rock Creek Mill purchase price was substantially less than the estimated cost of new equipment included in the original PEA and is incorporated into the new costs estimates for the Ixtaca Preliminary Feasibility Study.

## Pre-Feasibility Study (“PFS”)

Upon completion of the Amended PEA, Almaden began the work required for a Pre-Feasibility Study on the Ixtaca Project. During 2016, Almaden completed the necessary geotechnical, geomechanical, and hydrologic field programs, and also optimized site layout through updated waste placement and facilities locations. A new metallurgical program was also completed on the limestone domain, which represents approximately 82% of the total gold equivalent ounces produced over the life of the mine in the PFS.

The completed PFS was filed on SEDAR on May 17, 2017 and includes an updated resource model. The mine production schedule includes the optioned Rock Creek Mill while targeting higher grades earlier, and uses smaller, payback focused starter pits.

## HIGHLIGHTS

(base case uses US\$1250/oz gold and US\$18/oz silver prices):

- Pre-tax  
NPV(5%) of  
•US\$484 million  
and internal rate  
of return of 54%;
- After-tax  
NPV(5%) of  
•US\$310 million  
and internal rate  
of return of 41%;
- Initial Capital of  
•US\$117 million;
- After-tax  
payback of initial  
capital in 2.2  
years;
- Total Life of  
Mine production  
of 1.04 million  
ounces of gold  
and 70.9 million  
ounces of silver  
doré produced on  
site (2.07 million  
gold equivalent

ounces, or 143 million silver-equivalent ounces at a 69:1 silver to gold ratio);

- Average annual production over the first 9 years of 88,780 ounces gold and 5.47 million ounces silver (168,100 gold equivalent ounces, or 11.6 million silver equivalent ounces);
- Operating cost US\$706 per gold equivalent ounce, or US\$10.20 per silver equivalent ounce;
- All-in Sustaining Costs (“AISC”), including operating costs, sustaining capital, expansion capital, private and public royalties, refining and transport of US\$862 per gold equivalent ounce, or US\$12.50 per silver equivalent ounce;
- Proven and Probable Mineral Reserves of 65 million tonnes averaging 0.62 g/t gold and 37.8 g/t silver (average head grade of 1.16 g/t gold equivalent

using a 69:1  
silver to gold  
ratio).

### **Mineral Resource Estimate**

The mineral resource estimate at the Ixtaca Zone encompasses the Ixtaca Main, North, and Chemalaco Zones. On January 31, 2013 the Company announced a maiden resource on the Ixtaca Zone, which was followed by a resource update on January 22, 2014. Between that time and publication of the PFS, 33,618 metres of drilling were completed in 122 holes, and this data was also included in the current Mineral Resource Estimate. A total of 472 drill holes intersected the mineralized solids and were used to make the resource estimate. Capping was completed to reduce the effect of outliers within each domain. Uniform down hole 3 meter composites were produced for each domain and used to produce semi-variograms for each variable. Grades were interpolated into blocks 10 x 10 x 6 meters in dimension by ordinary kriging. Specific gravities were determined for each domain from drill core. Estimated blocks were classified as either Measured, Indicated or Inferred based on drill hole density and grade continuity.

The Base Case uses a 0.3g/t gold equivalent (“AuEq”) Cut-off, with 0.5, 0.7 and 1.0 g/t results included. The AuEq calculation is based upon average prices of US\$1250/oz gold and US\$18/oz silver.



**Cautionary Note to U.S. Investors concerning estimates of Measured and Indicated Resources**

This section uses the terms “measured resources” and “indicated resources”. We advise U.S. investors that while these terms are recognized and required by Canadian regulations, the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission does not recognize them. **U.S. Investors are cautioned not to assume that any part or all of mineral deposits in these categories will ever be converted into reserves.**

**MEASURED RESOURCE**

AuEq Cut-off Tonnes > Cut-off Grade > Cut-off					Contained Metal x 1,000		
(g/t)	(tonnes)	Au (g/t)	Ag (g/t)	AuEq (g/t)	Au (ozs)	Ag (ozs)	AuEq (ozs)
<b>0.30</b>	<b>42,450,000</b>	<b>0.57</b>	<b>35.74</b>	<b>1.09</b>	<b>779</b>	<b>48,780</b>	<b>1,482</b>
0.50	30,940,000	0.71	44.39	1.34	701	44,160	1,337
0.70	23,310,000	0.83	52.47	1.59	625	39,320	1,192
1.00	16,430,000	1.01	62.28	1.91	533	32,900	1,006

**INDICATED RESOURCE**

AuEq Cut-off Tonnes > Cut-off Grade > Cut-off					Contained Metal x 1,000		
(g/t)	(tonnes)	Au (g/t)	Ag (g/t)	AuEq (g/t)	Au (ozs)	Ag (ozs)	AuEq (ozs)
<b>0.30</b>	<b>83,370,000</b>	<b>0.45</b>	<b>22.54</b>	<b>0.77</b>	<b>1,195</b>	<b>60,410</b>	<b>2,064</b>
0.50	50,220,000	0.60	29.56	1.02	964	47,730	1,650
0.70	32,280,000	0.75	35.72	1.26	776	37,070	1,311
1.00	18,260,000	0.97	43.47	1.59	568	25,520	936

**Cautionary Note to U.S. Investors concerning estimates of Inferred Resources****Resources**

This section uses the term “inferred resources”. We advise U.S. investors that while this term is recognized and required by Canadian regulations, the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission does not recognize it. “Inferred resources” have a great amount of uncertainty as to their existence, and great uncertainty as to their economic and legal feasibility. It cannot be assumed that all or any part of an Inferred Mineral Resource will ever be upgraded to a higher category. Under Canadian rules, estimates of Inferred Mineral Resources may not form the basis of feasibility or other economic studies. **U.S. investors are cautioned not to assume that part or all of an inferred resource exists, or is economically or legally mineable.**

**INFERRED RESOURCE**

AuEq Cut-off Tonnes > Cut-off Grade > Cut-off					Contained Metal x 1,000		
---	--	--	--	--	-------------------------	--	--

Edgar Filing: ALMADEN MINERALS LTD - Form 20-F

(g/t)	(tonnes)	Au (g/t)	Ag (g/t)	AuEq (g/t)	Au (ozs)	Ag (ozs)	AuEq (ozs)
<b>0.30</b>	<b>47,050,000</b>	<b>0.30</b>	<b>19.15</b>	<b>0.58</b>	<b>457</b>	<b>28,970</b>	<b>874</b>
0.50	19,860,000	0.45	27.31	0.85	288	17,440	540
0.70	10,260,000	0.61	32.98	1.09	202	10,880	359
1.00	4,430,000	0.88	38.50	1.43	125	5,480	204

A mining design, cost model and production schedule have been developed for the Ixtaca Zone, focused on the near surface high grade limestone hosted portions of the Ixtaca Zone deposit. The mine schedule includes an open pit mining operation with a process plant to produce gold and silver dore. The plant will operate initially at an average plant throughput of 7,650 tonnes per day (tpd) and expanding to 15,300 tpd by Year 5. The process plant is designed to be the Rock Creek Mill relocated to the property and includes conventional crushing, grinding, gravity, flotation, and concentrate leaching using Carbon in pulp (CIP). In the PFS the limestone host rock comprised 82% of the metal produced, volcanic 8% and black shale 10% on a gold-equivalent basis using a 69:1 silver to gold ratio.

Mining will utilize a contractor owned and operated fleet. A series of pit optimizations have been completed using the resource block model, applying a range of metal prices and recoveries, estimated costs for mining, processing, and pit slopes. The operational pits are designed based on the optimized shell, and the potentially mineable portion of the resource is estimated within those pits. The ultimate pit contains a total of 65.1 million tonnes of mill feed at strip ratio of 5.01:1. The mill feed tonnages include a mining loss dilution. Mineral Reserves are shown in the below table assuming an NSR cut-off grade of \$15.40/t and are stated as Run of Mine (ROM) which represents tonnes of ore delivered to the mill. Mining recovery is 95% for all rock-types. All Inferred Resource Class material is treated as waste in calculating economic pit limits and in subsequent reserves reporting, scheduling and economics. The total mineable reserves from the Pre-Feasibility Study are given below:

### Recovered In-pit Resources and Diluted Grade

#### Run of Mine

	Tonnes (millions)	Diluted Average Grades		Contained Metal	
		Au (g/t)	Ag (g/t)	Au – '000 oz	Ag – '000 ozs
Proven	28.4	0.68	45.0	623	41,032
Probable	36.8	0.57	32.0	669	37,793
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>65.1</b>	<b>0.62</b>	<b>37.7</b>	<b>1,292</b>	<b>78,825</b>

Notes:

1. Mineral Reserves have an effective date of March 30, 2017. All Mineral Reserves are Proven and Probable, and are not in addition to Mineral Resources, but are a subset thereof. All Mineral Reserves account for mining loss and dilution.

2. Reserves are converted from resources through the process of pit optimization, pit design, production schedule and supported by a positive cash flow model.

3. Reserves are based on a gold price of US\$1,250/oz and silver price of US\$18.00, and an exchange rate of US\$1.00 to MXP20.00.

4. Associated metallurgical recoveries of gold and silver, respectively, have been estimated at 90% and 90% for limestone, 50% and 90% for volcanic, and 50% and 90% for black shale.

Estimated mining inventory is comprised of 326 million tonnes of rock and 65 million tonnes of mill feed with an average mill feed grade of 0.62 grams per tonne gold and 37.7 grams per tonne silver. A total of 1.04 million ounces of gold and 70.9 million ounces of silver would be produced over the 14 year mine life.

The ultimate open pit is separated into seven mining phases. The mine plan consists of one year of pre-stripping (prior to ore processing start-up), and fourteen years of open pit mining. Stockpile reclaim will be fed to the processing facility throughout the mine life. All open pit ore and reclaimed stockpile material will be fed to a primary crusher near the pit rim and transported to the processing facility on an overland conveyor.

Processing will use the Rock Creek Mill which was optioned by the Company in October 2015. The plant will operate initially at an average throughput of 7,650 tpd and expanding to 15,300 tpd by year 5, producing gold and silver doré

on site. The process plant includes the following key design criteria:

- Three-stage crushing followed by grinding to P80 passing 75 microns;
- Gravity concentration with intensive leaching of gravity concentrate;
- Flotation of gravity concentration tails;
- Carbon-in-Pulp (CIP) to recover gold and silver from flotation concentrate and gravity leach tails;
- An elution circuit to strip loaded carbon, electrowinning and smelting to produce a precious metal doré;
- Cyanide destruction;
- Final tailings are thickened, then delivered to the tailings management facility.

The following table summarizes the production and processing parameters:

### **Projected Production and Processing Summary**

Ore Reserves	65 million tonnes	
	7,650 tpd Year 1 to	
Average Processing Rate	4, 15,300 tpd Year 5 onwards	
Life of Mine (LOM) Strip Ratio	5 : 1	
	<b>Gold</b>	<b>Silver</b>
Average Mill Feed Grade	0.62 g/t	37.7 g/t
Average Process Recoveries	81%	90%
Average Annual Production LOM (ounces)	78,100	5,290,000
Total Production (ounces)	1,043,000	70,932,000

The total estimated initial capital cost is US\$116.9 million. Sustaining capital is estimated at US\$119.7 million over the life of the mine (LOM). The estimated capital and operating costs estimates have a level of accuracy of +/-20% within the PFS.

The initial capital costs are summarized below:

**Projected Initial Capital Costs (USD million)**

	<b>Base Case</b>
Mining	\$12.1
Process	\$35.6
Tailings Management Facility (TMF)	\$11.7
Water Management	\$5.4
Onsite Infrastructure	\$7.6
Offsite Infrastructure	\$7.8
Environmental	\$1.8
Indirects, EPCM, Contingency and Owner's Costs	\$34.9
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$116.9</b>

\* Numbers may not add due to rounding

The sustaining capital includes expansion capital of US\$72 million which would be funded from cash flow. The expansion capital costs are summarized below:

**Expansion Capital Costs (US\$ millions)**

Mining	\$1.3
Process	\$35.4
Infrastructure	\$12.2
TMF and Water Management	\$3.4
Indirects, EPCM, Contingency and Owner's Costs	\$19.7
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$72.1</b>

The total LOM operating costs are US\$22.5/tonne mill feed. This estimate includes contractor mining, processing, general & administrative, general mine expense, re-handle, reclamation, Tailings Management Facility and water management operating costs during the period of operations. Initial capital costs are not included in the LOM operating costs.

The LOM average costs are summarized below:

**Summary of Average LOM**

**Operating Costs (US\$/tonne mill  
feed)**

**Base Case**

Mining costs \$1.70      \$/tonne mined

Mining costs \$10.0      \$/tonne milled

Processing    \$11.6      \$/tonne milled

G&A            \$0.8      \$/tonne milled

**Total            \$22.5      \$/tonne milled**

\* Numbers may not add due to rounding

The PFS project economics are based on a gold price of US\$1250/oz and silver price of US\$18/oz. Project revenue is split between gold and silver with 51% of the revenue from gold and 49% from silver. The after-tax economic analysis includes a corporate tax rate of 30% as well as two new Mexican mining duties of a 7.5% special mining duty and a 0.5% extraordinary mining duty. All in unit sustaining costs are summarized below:

**Summary All-in sustaining cost (exclusive of initial capital)**

	<b>Total</b>	<b>US\$/ Oz US\$/ Oz</b>	
	<b>US\$ million</b>	<b>AuEq</b>	<b>AgEq</b>
Cash operating Cost	1,463	706	10.2
Sustaining Capital Cost	119	58	0.8
Almadex Royalty	50	24	0.4
Mexican royalty taxes	74	36	0.5
Refining + Transport	79	38	0.6
<b>Total</b>	<b>1,785</b>	<b>862</b>	<b>12.5</b>

A summary of financial outcomes comparing base case metal prices to two alternative metal price situations is presented below. The PFS base case prices are derived from a combination of spot prices and current common peer usage, while the alternate cases consider the project's economic outcomes at varying prices witnessed at some point over the three years prior to the date of the PFS.

**Summary of Economic Results and Sensitivities to Metals Price (US\$ Million)**

	<b>Lower Case</b>		<b>Base Case</b>		<b>Upper Case</b>	
	<b>Pre-Tax</b>	<b>After-Tax</b>	<b>Pre-Tax</b>	<b>After-Tax</b>	<b>Pre-Tax</b>	<b>After-Tax</b>
<b>Gold Price (US\$/oz)</b>	\$1150		<b>\$1250</b>		\$1350	
<b>Silver Price (US\$/oz)</b>	\$15		<b>\$18</b>		\$21	
<b>NPV (5% discount rate)</b>	\$275	\$175	<b>\$484</b>	<b>\$310</b>	\$693	\$443
<b>Internal Rate of Return (%)</b>	38%	28%	<b>54%</b>	<b>41%</b>	70%	52%
<b>Payback (years)</b>	2.4	2.6	<b>2.0</b>	<b>2.2</b>	1.6	1.9

The operating costs ("Opex") are projected to be US\$22.5 per tonne milled. The following table shows the sensitivity of project economics to a 10% change in the operating costs, assuming base case metals prices.

**Summary of Economic Results and Sensitivities to Operating Costs (US\$ Million)**

	<b>Lower Case</b>		<b>Base Case</b>		<b>Upper Case</b>	
	<b>Pre-Tax</b>	<b>After-Tax</b>	<b>Pre-Tax</b>	<b>After-Tax</b>	<b>Pre-Tax</b>	<b>After-Tax</b>
<b>Opex (US\$/t milled)</b>	-10%		\$22.5/t		+10%	



<b>NPV (5% discount rate)</b>	\$581	\$372	\$484	\$310	\$386	\$248
<b>Internal Rate of Return (%)</b>	61%	46%	54%	41%	48%	35%
<b>Payback (years)</b>	1.9	2.1	2.0	2.2	2.1	2.3

The Initial Capital cost is estimated to be US\$116.9 million. The following table shows the sensitivity of project economics to a 10% change in the initial capital costs, assuming base case metals prices.

**Summary of Economic Results and Sensitivities to Capital Cost (US\$ Million)**

	<b>Lower Case</b>		<b>Base Case</b>		<b>Upper Case</b>	
	<b>Pre-Tax</b>	<b>After-Tax</b>	<b>Pre-Tax</b>	<b>After-Tax</b>	<b>Pre-Tax</b>	<b>After-Tax</b>
<b>Initial Capital (US\$m)</b>	-10%		<b>116.9</b>		+10%	
<b>NPV (5% discount rate)</b>	\$495	\$318	<b>\$484</b>	<b>\$310</b>	\$473	\$302
<b>Internal Rate of Return (%)</b>	60%	45%	<b>54%</b>	<b>41%</b>	50%	37%
<b>Payback (years)</b>	1.9	2.1	<b>2.0</b>	<b>2.2</b>	2.1	2.3

The Ixtaca Project is also sensitive to the exchange rate between U.S. dollars and Mexican Pesos (“MXN”). The PFS assumes an exchange rate of 20 MXN per U.S. dollar, and the following table shows the sensitivity of project economics to different exchange rates assuming base case metals prices.

#### Summary of Economic Results and Sensitivities to Exchange Rate (US\$ Million)

	Lower Case		Base Case		Upper Case	
	Pre-Tax	After-Tax	Pre-Tax	After-Tax	Pre-Tax	After-Tax
<b>Exchange Rate (MXN:USD)</b>	18		<b>20</b>		22	
<b>NPV (5% discount rate)</b>	\$380	\$243	<b>\$484</b>	<b>\$310</b>	\$569	\$364
<b>Internal Rate of Return (%)</b>	47%	35%	<b>54%</b>	<b>41%</b>	60%	45%
<b>Payback (years)</b>	2.1	2.3	<b>2.0</b>	<b>2.2</b>	1.9	2.1

Almaden has secured through purchase agreements from numerous independent owners approximately 1,018 hectares which represents the majority of land required for the proposed production plan. This was completed through friendly land purchase agreements with locals, considering fair market value. There are no communities that require relocation as part of the Project development. Mineral Claim owners have the right to obtain the temporary occupancy, or creation of land easements required to carry out exploration and mining operations, under the Federal Mining Law.

#### Sample Preparation, Analyses and Security

All strongly altered or epithermal-mineralized intervals of core have been sampled. Almaden employs a maximum sample length of 2 to 3m in unmineralized lithologies, and a maximum sample length of 1m in mineralized lithologies. During the years 2010 and 2011 Almaden employed a minimum sample length of 20cm. The minimum sample length was increased to 50cm from 2012 onwards to ensure the availability of sufficient material for replicate analysis. Drill core is half-sawn using industry standard diamond core saws. After cutting, half the core is placed in a new plastic sample bag and half are placed back in the core box. Sample numbers are written on the outside of the sample bags and a numbered tag placed inside the bag. Sample bags are sealed using a plastic cable tie. Sample numbers are checked against the numbers on the core box and the sample book.

ALS Minerals (ALS) sends its own trucks to the Project to take custody of the samples at the Santa Maria core facility and transports them to its sample preparation facility in Guadalajara or Zacatecas, Mexico. Prepared sample pulps are then forwarded by ALS personnel to the ALS North Vancouver, British Columbia laboratory for analysis.

Drill core samples have been subject to gold determination via a 50 gram (g) Atomic Absorption (AA) finish Fire Assay (FA) fusion with a lower detection limit of 0.005ppm Au (5ppb) and upper limit of 10ppm Au (ALS method Au-AA24). Over limit gold values (>10ppm Au) are subject to gravimetric analysis (ALS method Au-GRA22). Silver, base metal and pathfinder elements for drill core samples are analyzed by ICP-AES, with a 4-acid digestion, a

lower detection limit of 0.5ppm Ag and upper detection limit of 100ppm Ag (ALS method ME-ICP61). Over limit silver values (>100ppm Ag) are subject to 4-acid digestion ICP-AES analysis with an upper limit of 1,500ppm Ag (ALS method ME-OG62). Ultra-high grade silver values (>1,500ppm Ag) are subject to gravimetric analysis with an upper detection limit of 10,000ppm Ag (Ag-GRA22).

### **Quality Assurance/Quality Control (QA/QC)**

For the Tuligtic rock grab sample and soil geochemical programs, the Company utilizes external quality assurance and quality control (QA/QC) measures employed by ALS. QA/QC measures at ALS include routine screen tests to verify crushing efficiency, sample preparation duplicates (every 50 samples), and analytical quality controls (blanks, standards, and duplicates). QC samples are inserted with each analytical run, with the minimum number of QC samples dependent on the rack size specific to the chosen analytical method. Results for quality control samples that fall beyond the established limits are automatically red-flagged for serious failures and yellow-flagged for borderline results. Every batch of samples is subject to a dual approval and review process, both by the individual analyst and the Department Manager, before final approval and certification.

Drill core samples are subject to Almaden's internal QA/QC program that includes the insertion of analytical standard, blank and duplicate samples into the sample stream. A total of 15 QA/QC samples are present in every 100 samples sent to the laboratory.

QA/QC sample results are reviewed following receipt of each analytical batch. QA/QC samples falling outside established limits are flagged and subject to review and possibly re-analysis, along with the 10 preceding and succeeding samples. Where the re-analyses fall within acceptable QA/QC limits the values are added to the drill core assay database.

### **Current Work**

Since the completion of the Pre-Feasibility Study, work on the Ixtaca project has focused on collecting the data necessary for completion of a Full Feasibility Study, which is expected to be completed during 2018. Various feasibility-related programs are currently underway, including:

- Feasibility-level
  - engineering design;
  - Additional geotechnical
  - evaluations in areas of infrastructure and pit slope;
  - Continued
  - monitoring of water quality and flow;
  - Metallurgical test work to
  - further refine the process flowsheet

The Company has completed the required studies and prepared the initial draft Environmental Impact Assessment (MIA), which has been submitted to a third-party for review before the final document is submitted.

A Social Impact Assessment of the Ixtaca project has been completed by Mexico City based consulting group which concluded that Almaden has consulted widely with the Focus Area communities, the project was well understood, and the SIA was successful in providing people with an opportunity to clearly express their views on the impacts of the project development.

Exploration drilling has continued both within the PFS pit area and in zones outside the PFS pit and resource area, with the focus of the drilling to add additional resources which could potentially be mined either by open pit or underground methods for inclusion in future engineering studies. Recent holes have intersected significant mineralisation and veining inside the PFS pit, including within material that had been previously designated as waste material in the PFS. Other holes have expanded the Main Ixtaca Zone to depth and intersected mineralization immediately outside the PFS pit.

Results of this drilling included:

**Hole TU-17-532 SECTION 50025 NORTH Az. 070, Dip -80 (BENEATH PFS PIT)**

101.45 meters @ 1.94 g/t Au and 12.7 g/t Ag

Including 46.20 meters @ 3.87 g/t Au and 15.1 g/t Ag

And 28.95 meters @ 5.61 g/t Au and 19.7 g/t Ag

And 13.10 meters @ 9.35 g/t Au and 25.5 g/t Ag

**Hole GMET-17-13 SECTION 49950 NORTH Az. 070, Dip -35 (WITHIN PFS PIT)**

53.90 meters @ 0.48 g/t Au and 37.8 g/t Ag

Including 7.00 meters @ 1.11 g/t Au and 95.3 g/t Ag

**Hole GMET-17-14 SECTION 49950 NORTH Az. 070, Dip -60 (WITHIN AND BENEATH PFS PIT)**

24.00 meters @ 1.90 g/t Au and 16.3 g/t Ag

Including 12.00m @ 3.66 g/t Au and 26.6 g/t Ag

And 5.00 m @ 7.91 g/t Au and 33.8 g/t Ag

57.55 meters @ 1.29 g/t Au and 23.5 g/t Ag

Including 3.00 meters @ 16.87 g/t Au and 37.7 g/t

Beyond the Ixtaca deposit, other exploration targets exist on the Tuligtic property. The Tuligtic claim covers an area of high level epithermal clay alteration. The project area is partially covered by volcanic ash deposits which mask underlying alteration, potential vein zones and associated soil responses. In areas devoid of this covering ash, soil sampling has defined several distinct zones of elevated gold and silver values and trace elements typically associated with epithermal vein systems. The other altered and geochemically anomalous areas could represent additional zones of underlying quartz-carbonate epithermal veining like the Ixtaca zone.

Several recent holes have been drilled in the Tano Zone, which is located about 1.2 kilometers southwest along strike from the Main Ixtaca Zone and the PFS pit. The Tano zone covers an area of exposed volcanic and breccia hosted alteration and elevated gold in soil samples.

**Hole TU-17-530 Az. 270, Dip -50**

46.00 meters @ 0.57 g/t Au and 2.2 g/t Ag

Including 26.00 meters @ 0.71 g/t Au and 2.3 g/t Ag

And 6.00 meters @ 1.06 g/t Au and 2.3 g/t Ag

**Hole TU-17-531 Az. 000, Dip -50**

10.00 meters @ 2.11 g/t Au and 1.6 g/t Ag

Including 6.00 meters @ 3.38 g/t Au and 2.0 g/t Ag

And 2.00 meters @ 8.17 g/t Au and 3.8 g/t Ag

**Hole TU-17-533 Az. 185, Dip -55**

10.50 meters @ 0.83 g/t Au and 2.4 g/t Ag

Including 3.00m @ 1.26 g/t Au and 1.5 g/t Ag

There is no drilling between these holes and the PFS pit area, along the 060 Azimuth trend of the Main Ixtaca Zone, and this gap is considered highly prospective. Further drilling in the Tano Zone area is currently underway.

***Upcoming / Outlook***

Almaden has sufficient cash on hand to conduct its anticipated work program for the next fiscal year at Ixtaca. Advanced engineering studies related to the Feasibility Study will continue to be the emphasis of this year's work program, as well as preparations necessary to advance permitting activities for the Ixtaca project, which includes the filing of the Environmental Impact Assessment. The Company will also continue the exploration drill program to test for additional high grade vein structures immediately adjacent to known mineralisation within and around the PFS pit.

## **Item 5. Operating and Financial Review and Prospects**

### ***Operating Results***

The following discussion and analysis of the results of operations and the Company's financial position should be read in conjunction with the consolidated financial statements and related notes for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015 appearing under Item 18 – Financial Statements and listed under Item 19 – Exhibits.

The Company's consolidated financial statements are stated in Canadian Dollars and have been prepared in accordance and compliance with International Financial Reporting Standards as issued by the International Accounting Standards Board ("IFRS").

The Company is in the business of exploring its principal mineral property in Mexico with the aim of developing it to a stage where it can be exploited at a profit or to arrange joint ventures or other business transactions whereby other companies provide, in whole or in part, funding for development and exploitation. At that stage, the Company's operations would, to some extent, be dependent on the world market prices of any minerals mined. The Company does not have producing properties and operations on its properties.



The Company receives other income from an Administrative Services Agreement with Almadex Minerals Limited. Under the Agreement, the Company is the sole and exclusive manager of Almadex. Almadex compensates the Company 30% of the Company's actual monthly cost of rent for any shared facilities, and 30% of any shared personnel's fees and/or wages. Almadex also pays the Company any reasonable fees or costs incurred on behalf of Almadex by the Company which were approved by Almadex. The Administrative Services Agreement has an initial 5-year term, with subsequent automatic 1 year renewals unless terminated pursuant to the terms permitted under the Agreement. The Agreement includes a Change of Control clause. If either party is subject to a Change of Control during the term of the Agreement, the Agreement shall automatically terminate within 48 hours of the Change of Control unless agreed to in writing by both parties. The target of the Change of Control shall then pay the other party \$2 million as compensation for the unplanned termination of the Company's engagement and significant disruption to the other party's business. "Change of Control" means the date upon which, without the written concurrence of the target of the Change of Control, any person (as that term is defined in the *Securities Act* (British Columbia)) makes and does not withdraw a take-over bid (as that term is defined in the *Securities Act* (British Columbia)) or acquires, directly or indirectly, that number of common shares of the target which equals or exceeds twenty percent (20%) of the then issued common shares of the target.

### **Fiscal 2017 compared to Fiscal 2016**

For the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company recorded a net loss and comprehensive loss of \$5,231,295 or \$0.05 per share compared to a net loss of \$4,023,504 or \$0.05 per share for the year ended December 31, 2016. The increase in net loss of \$1,207,791 was primarily a result of increased operating expenses, in particular in compensation, share-based payments and professional fees.

Because the Company is an exploration company, it has no revenue from mining operations. Other income of \$468,448 (2016 - \$443,560) during the year ended December 31, 2017, consisted of mainly interest income and other income from administrative services fees earned from Almadex partially offset by foreign exchange loss.

Operating expenses were \$5,699,743 during the year ended December 31, 2017 (December 31, 2016 - \$4,467,064). Certain operating expenses were reported on a gross basis and recovered through interest and other income at approximately 30% from the administrative services agreement with Almadex. The increase in operating expenses of \$1,232,679 was mainly the result of increased professional fees related to corporate legal services performed in Mexico. Salaries and benefits, stock exchange fees, and directors' fees were increased compared to the same time last year as a result of normal course of operating a public company. Share-based payments increased by \$824,060 due to stock option grants during the period.

### **Fiscal 2016 compared to Fiscal 2015**

For the year ended December 31, 2016, the Company recorded a net loss and comprehensive loss of \$4,023,504 or \$0.05 per share compared to a net loss of \$1,477,977 or \$0.02 per share for the year ended December 31, 2015. The increase in net loss of \$2,545,527 was primarily a result of the gain recognized in the transfer of spin-out assets to Almadex of \$3,115,422 offset by the other comprehensive loss of \$333,452 in 2015.

The Company has no revenues from mining operations as it only conducted exploration and development work. Other income (loss) of \$443,504 (2015 – \$2,710,588) during the year ended December 31, 2016 consisted mainly of interest income and administrative service fees whereas in 2015, assets spun-out to Almadex generated other sources of income. Interest income during the year ended December 31, 2016 increased by \$246,868 as a result of higher cash balances available for investment. The administrative service fees in 2016 also increased by \$238,374 compared to 2015 as a result of a full year charge whereas in 2015, the Company only earned 5 months of services fees from August 1, 2015 to December 31, 2015.

Operating expenses were \$4,467,064 during the year ended December 31, 2016 (2015 - \$4,259,713). The increase operating expenses of \$207,351 was mainly the result of higher salaries of \$574,494 offset by decreases in professional fees, stock exchange fees, and depreciation as a result of the corporate reorganization completed in 2015. The increase in salaries was due to the Chairman and the CEO's salaries recorded in salaries and benefits to reflect their functions related to operating a public company rather than general exploration services performed in 2015. The spin-out transactions in 2015 produced higher operating expenses in professional fees and stock exchange fees.

### ***Liquidity and Capital Resources***

As at December 31, 2017, the Company's working capital position was \$16,065,496. Management estimates that the current cash position and expected future cash flows from the exercise of outstanding stock options and warrants and equity financing will be sufficient for the Company to carry out its anticipated exploration and operating plans for fiscal 2018 that includes further development of the Ixtaca property.

Management believes that the Company's cash resources are sufficient to meet its working capital and mineral exploration requirements for its next fiscal year.

## **Fiscal 2017**

At December 31, 2017, the Company had working capital of \$16,065,496 including cash and cash equivalents of \$16,334,534 compared to working capital of \$9,293,081 including cash and cash equivalents of \$9,770,006 at December 31, 2016. The increase in working capital of \$6,772,415 is mainly due to increase in cash flow from financing raised through two private placements completed during the year.

The Company has a deferred income tax liability in the amount of \$1,434,882. The deferred income tax liability relates to the Mexican income tax and Special Mining Duty associated with the Ixtaca Project.

Management believes that the Company's cash resources are sufficient to meet its working capital and mineral exploration requirements for its next fiscal year. On February 7, 2017, the Company closed a non-brokered private placement for gross proceeds of \$3,401,199 and on June 1, 2017, the Company closed a bought deal private placement for gross proceeds of \$17,251,150. As a result of both financings, the Company has been able to raise money even in a very challenging financial marketplace.

Net cash used in operating activities during the year ended December 31, 2017, was \$2,674,767 (2016 - \$2,321,136), after adjusting for non-cash activities.

Net cash used in investing activities during the year ended December 31, 2017, was \$12,808,053 (2016 - \$5,524,623). Significant items include expenditures on exploration and evaluation assets of \$8,860,153 (2016 - \$5,177,485), and deposit on mill equipment of \$3,642,826 (2016 - \$324,600).

Net cash from financing activities during the year December 31, 2017, was \$22,047,348 (2016 - \$11,392,987) as a result of a non-brokered private placement that closed on February 7, 2017, and a bought deal private placement which closed on June 1, 2017, and options and warrants exercised, net of share issue costs.

Management estimates that the current cash position and potential future cash flows from in the money stock options and warrants will be sufficient for the Company to carry out its anticipated exploration and operating plans for the foreseeable future. There may be circumstances where, for sound business reasons, a reallocation of funds may be necessary in order for the Company to achieve its stated business objectives.

## **Fiscal 2016**

At the end of Fiscal 2016, the Company had working capital of \$9,293,081 including cash and cash equivalents of \$9,770,006 compared to working capital of \$5,808,473 including cash and cash equivalents of \$6,222,778 at the end of Fiscal 2015. The increase in working capital of \$3,484,608 was mainly due to a non-brokered private placement that closed on May 25, 2016 for gross proceeds of \$4,359,260, and \$7,130,747 received through the exercise of 4,592,667 warrants during 2016.

Cash used in operations during Fiscal 2016 was \$2,321,136 (Fiscal 2015 - \$3,015,966) after adjusting for non-cash activities.

Cash used in investing activities during Fiscal 2016 was \$5,524,623 (Fiscal 2015 - \$4,362,807). Significant items include expenditures on mineral property interests of \$5,177,485 (Fiscal 2015 - \$3,668,974) primarily on land acquisition of \$1,578,436 (Fiscal 2015 - \$831,455) and exploration costs on the Tuligtic property of \$3,868,910 (Fiscal 2015 - \$3,048,151). The Company also invested \$324,600 (Fiscal 2015 - \$692,000) pursuant to the terms of an Asset Purchase Option Agreement dated October 16, 2015 with Alaska Gold Company, LLC and Bering Straits Native Corporation (the "Asset Purchase Option Agreement") in respect of an option on certain mining equipment referred to as the "Rock Creek mill".

On May 25, 2016, the Company closed a non-brokered private placement by the issuance of 3,229,082 units at a price of \$1.35 per unit for gross proceeds to the Company of \$4,359,260. Each unit consists of one common share and one-half of one non-transferable common share purchase warrant. Each whole warrant allows the holder to purchase one common share of the Company at a price of \$2.00 per share until November 25, 2018. Share issue costs included a finder's fee of \$147,925 in cash, and finders' warrants to purchase up to 45,944 common shares at a price of \$1.44 per common share until November 25, 2018. The fair value of the finders' warrants was \$17,918. In connection with the private placement, the Company also incurred \$119,689 in share issue costs. These amounts were recorded as reduction to share capital. The proceeds of the private placement were allocated entirely to share capital.

## **Fiscal 2015**

At the end of Fiscal 2015, the Company had a working capital of \$5,808,473 including cash and cash equivalents of \$6,222,778 compared to working capital of \$9,171,791 including cash and cash equivalents of \$8,172,598 at the end of Fiscal 2014. The decline in working capital of \$3,363,318 was mainly due to current assets spun out to Almadex including Marketable Securities and Gold Inventory. During Fiscal 2015, the Company closed two non-brokered private placements for gross proceeds of \$8,905,000 to continue the Ixtaca exploration and development program.

Cash used in operations during Fiscal 2015 was \$3,015,966 (Fiscal 2014 - \$2,910,414) after adjusting for non-cash activities.

Cash used in investing activities during Fiscal 2015 was \$4,362,807 (Fiscal 2014 - \$6,792,511). Significant items include expenditures on mineral property interests of \$3,668,974 (Fiscal 2014 - \$6,946,559) primarily on land acquisition of \$831,455 (Fiscal 2014 - \$1,137,914) and exploration costs on the Tuligtic property of \$3,048,151 (Fiscal 2014 - \$5,155,990). The Company also invested \$692,000 (Fiscal 2014 - \$Nil) pursuant to the terms of an Asset Purchase Option Agreement dated October 16, 2015 with Alaska Gold Company, LLC and Bering Straits Native Corporation (the "Asset Purchase Option Agreement") in respect of an option on certain mining equipment referred to as the "Rock Creek mill".

On February 11, 2015, the Company closed on a non-brokered private placement by the issuance of 4,420,000 units at a price of \$1.25 per unit for gross proceeds to the Company of \$5,525,000 less share issue costs of \$372,763. Each unit consisted of one common share and one-half of one non-transferrable common share purchase warrant. Each whole warrant allows the holder to purchase one common share at a price of \$2.00 per common share until February 11, 2016. A finder's fee of \$212,626 in cash and finder's warrants to purchase up to 49,410 common shares at a price of \$1.28 per common share until February 11, 2016 was paid on a portion of the placement. The fair value of the finder's warrants of \$13,341 was estimated using the Black-Scholes option pricing model.

On November 17, 2015, the Company closed on a non-brokered private placement by the issuance of 4,506,666 units at a price of \$0.75 per unit for gross proceeds to the Company of \$3,380,000 less share issue costs of \$122,609. Each unit consisted of one common share and one-half of one non-transferrable common share purchase warrant. Each whole warrant allows the holder to purchase one common share at a price of \$1.00 per common share until November 17, 2017. A finder's fee of \$73,550 in cash and finder's warrants to purchase up to 35,200 common shares at a price of \$0.77 per common share until November 17, 2017 was paid on a portion of the placement. The fair value of the finder's warrants of \$5,984 was estimated using the Black-Scholes option pricing model.

## ***Research and Development, Patents and Licenses***

The Company conducts no Research and Development activities, nor is it dependent upon any patents or licenses.

*Trend information*

During 2017, prices of precious metals continued to be quite volatile, with the gold price trading at a low of about US\$1160/ounce in January 2017 and a high of over US\$1350/ounce in July, before finishing the year at US\$1300/ounce. The price of silver followed a similar volatile trajectory, trading at a low of about US\$15.30 in January 2017 and a high of over US\$18.00 in August, before finishing the year at about US\$16.90/ounce. The volatility of the gold and silver prices contributed to an uncertain environment for mine planning and design and for the capital markets, which was not conducive to a vibrant financing environment for mining and mineral exploration companies. In addition, traditional sources of financing to this sector have been impacted by the increasing popularity of index funds, which gain exposure to the sector through purchases and sales through exchanges, as opposed to transactions directly with issuers in the form of financings. Capital is still available for mining and mineral exploration companies, but increasingly the sources of capital are fewer but larger, as are the financing transactions themselves.

It remains unclear how long the volatility in metals prices will continue, and whether or when the financing climate for mining and mineral exploration companies will improve. In prior years, significant selling on Comex and redemptions from gold and silver funds contributed to the steep reduction in metal prices. These lower prices in turn resulted in large producers selling non-core or high cost assets, suspending or shelving new mine construction, and initiating severe cost control measures, including sharply reducing exploration expenditures. The lower price environment also led to large write-downs of assets and recent acquisitions by many companies, and resulted in significant reductions to mineable reserves worldwide. Lower prices also resulted in miners selectively mining higher grade portions of a deposit, which may effectively sterilize lower grade portions from ever being mined even with higher prices at a later date. Reserves are also declining due to mining operations, yet generally speaking these depleted reserves are not being replaced because of reduced exploration efforts over the past several years.

One of the easiest areas to cut costs is by cutting or eliminating exploration and acquisition activity. With the recovery in the precious metals markets and relatively improved financing climate starting in 2016, we saw many large miners return to exploration after a prolonged reduction in activity. However, in the wake of the difficult operating environment up until mid-2016, most of these companies are still quite risk-averse and as a result, what exploration is taking place is focused near their own mine operations in an attempt to replace the depleted reserves, and very little early-stage, regional exploration is being supported by them. For the same reason, M&A activity has been muted as a number of miners are still working through acquisitions which were predicated on higher metal prices, while others are fully occupied with balance sheet issues or optimization of their existing mine plans.

Much of the volatility in precious metals prices is caused by uncertainties regarding economic growth of the major economies and the policy response of central bankers to the economic environment. Geopolitical uncertainty continued in 2017 as the utility of traditional global political and trade alliances has been openly questioned at the highest levels. Currency markets have responded with increased volatility. Given that varying proportions of the costs of production in mining operations are valued in the local currencies, whereas the metals themselves are generally sold in U.S. dollars, currency exchange rates can have a significant impact on operating conditions.

The uncertain times have led to some cash strapped governments to seek or threaten higher tax and royalty policies while others consider lowering them to attract investment. Globalization of trade and markets has been more important to the mineral industry than many other industries, and because of current conditions these concepts are under question by many vested interest groups. At the same time, environmental groups have successfully lobbied for more wilderness areas and parks where exploration and mining activities are prohibited. Indigenous groups are actively pursuing land claims and there is a rise of militant national and religious groups in many parts of the world. Pressure from such groups can lead to increased regulation and this must be monitored closely to recognize a point where it becomes excessive. Many governments are pursuing regulations and taxes on emissions of so called “greenhouse gases” that could raise costs for many industries including metal mining. As more and more stakeholders become interested in mining ventures there is an increasing need to maintain cooperation with valid concerned groups, particularly among the local community where the project is located. Some of these issues tend to restrict the areas where mineral exploration and development of new mines can occur. This should make areas permissive to exploration more attractive and a previously discerned need for new, quality exploration projects based on sound geological work continues.

The world may be slow to find direction within the current climate, and a further deterioration of these conditions remains a serious threat. If such deterioration occurs, and depending on the policy response of domestic governments, lower industrial activity may be the result and this could lower the demand for base metals, although management believes that precious metals will continue to be in demand as a store of value.

The Company plans to continue its work programs on the Ixtaca project with the aim of it developing into one of the more attractive advanced projects in the world in the expectation that the markets for gold and silver projects will improve.

***Off-balance Sheet Arrangements***

The Company has no off-balance sheet arrangements other than the lease related to its office premises as disclosed below.

45



**Contractual Obligations**

The Company is obligated under an operating lease for its office premises with the following aggregate minimum lease payments to the Company's office lease effective April 1, 2017 through to March 31, 2022. The Company does have government requirements in work and/or taxes to maintain other claims held. The decision to keep or abandon such claims is not contractual but at the discretion of the Company. All other property option payments on the Company's projects have been assumed by third parties who are earning their interests in the projects.

On January 29, 2013, the Company entered into contracts with its Chairman and President for an annual remuneration of \$240,000 and \$265,000 respectively effective January 1, 2013, for two years, renewable for two additional successive terms of 24 months each. Effective December 31, 2015, the Chairman's contract was mutually terminated and effective January 1, 2016, the Company and the Chairman entered into a new contract for an annual remuneration of \$240,000 for two years, renewable for two additional successive terms of 24 months each. The Chairman's contract and the President's contract were amended April 1, 2016. Effective May 24, 2011, as amended April 1, 2016, the Company and the Chief Financial Officer ("CFO") entered into an Employment Agreement for an indefinite term and, effective September 22, 2014, as amended April 1, 2016, the Company and the Vice President, Corporate Development ("VP") entered into an Employment Agreement for an indefinite term. Effective January 1, 2016, the Chairman's and President's base salaries ("Base Salary") were \$240,000 and \$265,000, respectively, and the CFO's and VP's Base Salaries were \$185,000 and \$175,000, respectively. Effective January 1, 2017, the Chairman's, President's, CFO's and VP's Base Salaries were \$240,000, \$305,000, \$203,500 and \$192,500, respectively. Table No. 4 lists the total contractual obligations as at December 31, 2017 for each period. Under an Administrative Services Agreement between the Company and Almadex Minerals Limited, the Company provides management services to Almadex. Almadex compensates the Company 30% of any shared personnel remuneration and office overhead expenses. Therefore, Almadex currently recovers 30% of the contractual compensation amounts for the Chairman, Chief Executive Officer, Chief Financial Officer and Vice President, Corporate Development.

**Table No. 4****Contractual Obligations of the Company**

	Payments due by period				
	Total	Less than 1 year	1 – 3 years	3 – 5 years	More than 5 years
Operating lease	\$647,234	\$148,410	\$305,066	\$193,758	-
Executive contracts <sup>(1)</sup>	\$1,295,000	\$575,000	\$480,000	\$240,000	-

<sup>(1)</sup> Pursuant to the terms of the Administrative Services Agreement between the Company and Almadex Minerals Limited, the Company currently recovers 30% of the contractual compensation amounts for the Chairman and Chief Executive Officer, as the executive contracts for the CFO and VP are not considered long term contractual obligations of the Company.

Contractual obligations of the Company in the above table exclude future option payments required to maintain the Company's interest in certain mineral properties and option payments under the Asset Purchase Option Agreement in respect to the Rock Creek mill.

*Significant accounting judgments and estimates*

Significant assumptions about the future and other sources of judgments and estimates that management has made at the statement of financial position dates, that could result in a material adjustment to the carrying amounts of assets and liabilities, in the event that actual results differ from assumptions made, relate to, but are not limited to, the following:

Critical Judgments

The analysis of the functional currency for each entity of the Company determined by conducting an analysis of the consideration factors identified in IAS 21, "The Effect of Changes in Foreign Exchange Rates". In concluding that the Canadian dollar is the functional currency of the parent and its subsidiary companies, management considered the currency that mainly influences the cost of providing goods and services in each jurisdiction in which the Company operates. As no single currency was clearly dominant, the Company also considered secondary indicators including the currency in which funds from financing activities are denominated and the currency in which funds are retained.

- o The determination that the carrying amount of the Tuligtic Project will be recovered through use rather than sale.

### Estimates

- o The recoverability of accounts receivable which is included in the consolidated statements of financial position;
  - o The estimated annual gains or losses from income and dilution on the former investment in associate;
- o The estimated useful lives of property, plant and equipment which are included in the consolidated statements of financial position and the related depreciation included in the profit or loss;
- o The recoverability of the value of the exploration and evaluation assets which is recorded in the consolidated statements of financial position;
  - o The Company uses the Black-Scholes option pricing model to determine the fair value of options and warrants in order to calculate share-based payments expense and the fair value of finders' warrants and stock options. Certain inputs into the model are estimates that involve considerable judgment and are or could be affected by significant factors that are out of the Company's control;
  - o The provision for income taxes which is included in profit or loss and the composition of deferred income tax liability included in the consolidated statement of financial position and the evaluation of the recoverability of deferred tax assets based on an assessment of the Company's ability to utilize the underlying future tax deductions against future taxable income prior to expiry of those deductions;
  - o The assessment of indications of impairment of each exploration and evaluation asset and related determination of the net realizable value and write-down of those assets where applicable;

### **Item 6. Directors, Senior Management and Employees**

Table No. 5 lists the directors of the Company as of March 28, 2018. The directors have served in their respective capacities since their election and/or appointment and will serve until the next annual general meeting of the Company or until a successor is duly elected, unless the office is vacated in accordance with the Articles of the Company. All directors are residents and citizens of Canada.

#### **Table No. 5**

##### **Directors of the Company**

Name	Age	Date First Elected or Appointed
James Duane Poliquin	77	February 1, 2002 <sup>(4)</sup>
John D. McCleary <sup>(2)(3)</sup>	77	February 1, 2002 <sup>(4)</sup>
Morgan Poliquin	46	February 1, 2002 <sup>(4)</sup>
Gerald G. Carlson <sup>(1)(2)(3)</sup>	72	February 1, 2002 <sup>(4)</sup>
Mark T. Brown <sup>(1)(3)</sup>	49	30-May-11
William J. Worrall <sup>(1)(2)(3)</sup>	85	7-May-13

David Strang<sup>(5)</sup> 49 8-Aug-16  
Elaine Ellingham<sup>(6)</sup> 59 27-Feb-18

(1) Member of Audit Committee

(2) Member of Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee

(3) Member of Compensation Committee

(4) Date of issue of the Certificate of Amalgamation

(5) David Strang was appointed a Director of the Company on August 8, 2016 following the resignation of Joseph Montgomery

(6) Elaine Ellingham was appointed an additional Director of the Company on February 27, 2018

Duane Poliquin was a director of Almaden Resources Corporation since September 1980, Jack McCleary since June 1991 and Morgan Poliquin since June 1999.

Duane Poliquin was a director of Fairfield Minerals Ltd. since June 1996, and Gerald G. Carlson since July 1998.

Table No.6 lists the Executive Officers of the Company as of March 28, 2018. The Executive Officers serve at the pleasure of the Board of Directors, subject to the terms of executive compensation agreements hereinafter described. All Executive Officers are residents and citizens of Canada.

**Table No. 6**

**Executive Officers of the Company**

Name	Position	Age	Date First Appointed
James Duane Poliquin	Chairman of the Board	77	February 1, 2002 <sup>(4)</sup>
Morgan Poliquin	President and Chief Executive Officer	46	1-Mar-07
Korm Trieu	Chief Financial Officer	52	30-May-11
Douglas McDonald	Vice-President, Corporate Development	49	22-Sep-14

<sup>(4)</sup> Date of issue of the Certificate of Amalgamation

Duane Poliquin was appointed an Officer of Almaden Resources Corporation in September 1980 and of Fairfield Minerals Ltd. in June 1996.

**Duane Poliquin** is a registered professional geological engineer with over 50 years of experience in mineral exploration and he is the founding shareholder of Almaden Resources Corporation. He gained international experience working with major mining companies where he participated in the discovery of several important mineral deposits. Mr. Poliquin has held executive positions and directorships with several junior resource companies over his career. He was founder and President of Westley Mines Ltd. when that company discovered the Santa Fe gold deposit in Nevada. Mr. Poliquin spends virtually all of his time on the affairs of the Company and Almadex Minerals Limited of which he also serves as Chairman of the Board and a director.

**John D. (Jack) McCleary** is a registered professional geologist with over 40 years' experience in petroleum and mineral exploration. He has held executive positions with several junior resource companies over his career and for several years was a Vice President of Dominion Securities Ltd. He served as a director and President of Canadian Hydro Developers Inc. until December 1995 at which time he retired and as a director and President of Troymin Resources Ltd. until April 2003 at which time Troymin amalgamated with Santoy Resources Ltd. where he served as a director for 5 years. Mr. McCleary is also a director of Almadex Minerals Limited and spends less than 5% of his time on the affairs of the Company.

**Morgan Poliquin** is a registered professional geological engineer with over 20 years' experience in mineral exploration since graduating with a B.A.Sc. degree in geological engineering from the University of British Columbia

(1994). In 1996 he earned a M.Sc. in geology from the University of Auckland, New Zealand studying geothermal and epithermal deposits in the South Pacific including the Emperor Gold Deposit, Fiji. In 2010, Dr. Poliquin earned his Ph.D. in Geology from the Camborne School of Mines, University of Exeter. He is President and CEO of the Company and oversees corporate matters as well as directing the Company's exploration program. Dr. Poliquin spends virtually all of his time directing the exploration programs and the affairs of the Company in Almaden and Almadex Minerals Limited of which he also serves as President, CEO and a director.

**Gerald G. Carlson** has been involved in mineral exploration and junior exploration company management for over 40 years. Mr. Carlson has a B.A.Sc. from the University of Toronto, a M.Sc. from Michigan Technological University and a Ph.D. from Dartmouth College. He is President, CEO and a director of Pacific Ridge Exploration Ltd., a gold and zinc exploration company listed on the TSX-V and a director of New Point Exploration Corp. listed on the CSE. He is a past President of AME BC (formerly the B.C. and Yukon Chamber of Mines), President of the Society of Economic Geologists Canada Foundation, a Fellow of the Society of Economic Geologists, a member of the Professional Engineers and Geoscientists of British Columbia, the Professional Engineers of the Yukon Territory and the Canadian Institute of Mining, Metallurgy & Petroleum. Mr. Carlson spends less than 5% of his time on the affairs of the Company.

**Mark T. Brown** is a Chartered Professional Accountant (CPA, CA) and earned a Bachelor's Degree in Commerce from the University of British Columbia in 1990. Mr. Brown received his Chartered Accountant's designation in 1993 while working at Price Waterhouse, Chartered Accountants. From 1994 to 1997, he was the controller of two TSE (now TSX) 300 mining companies, one after the other, each of which produced in excess of 100,000 ounces of gold annually. At the end of 1997, Mr. Brown joined Pacific Opportunity Capital Ltd. which was set up to provide business financial support, both administratively and for transactions and negotiations, to public and private emerging companies. Mr. Brown spends approximately 5% of his time on the affairs of the Company. He also serves as a director and executive chairman of Alianza Minerals Ltd. and Avrupa Minerals Ltd., both mineral exploration companies listed on the TSX-V. Mr. Brown also serves as a director, President, or Chief Financial Officer of the following companies:

- a. Director - Big Sky Petroleum Ltd., an oil and gas company listed on the TSX-V.
- b. Director - Strategem Capital Corp., an investment issuer listed on the TSX-V.
- c. Director - Sutter Gold Mining Ltd., a gold exploration company listed on the TSX-V.
- d. President, CEO and Director - Paget Minerals Ltd., an exploration company listed on the TSX-V.
- e. Director - Almadex Minerals Limited, an exploration company listed on the TSX-V.
- f. Chief Financial Officer - Adamera Minerals Corp., an exploration company listed on the TSX-V.
- g. Chief Financial Officer – Redstar Gold Corp., an exploration company listed on the TSX-V.
- h. Chief Financial Officer – Orestone Mining Corp., an exploration company listed on the TSX-V.
- i. President, CEO and Director – Mountain Boy Minerals Ltd., an exploration company listed on the TSX-V.

**William J. Worrall** is a retired lawyer with over 55 years practice primarily in the areas of securities, national and transnational corporate and commercial transactions, including mergers and acquisitions, with emphasis on junior resource companies engaged in mining and oil and gas exploration and development. Mr. Worrall spends less than 5% of his time on the affairs of the Company. He is also a director of Almadex Minerals Limited.

**David Strang** holds a Bachelor of Science in Applied Earth Sciences from Stanford University. David serves as Director, CEO and President of Ero Copper Corporation. Previously, David served as Director, CEO and President of Lumina Copper Corp. and Lumina Royalty Corp. He also served as CEO and President of Global Copper Corp. and Lumina Resources Corp. Mr. Strang spends less than 5% of his time on the affairs of the Company.

**Elaine Ellingham** is a professional geoscientist with over 35 years of experience in the mining industry, having held senior positions in several mining companies. Ms. Ellingham serves as President of Ellingham Consulting, an independent consulting firm providing geological and advisory services. She spent eight years with the Toronto Stock Exchange serving in various capacities, including four years as the TSX National Leader of Mining & International Business Development. Ms. Ellingham has also served as interim CEO and Director of Richmond Mines Inc. and Senior Vice President, Investor Relations at IAMGOLD, in addition to other corporate development experience with Campbell Resources and Rio Algom Limited. She is also an active director on the Boards of Aurania Resources, Wallbridge Mining and the Prospectors and Developers Association of Canada. Ms. Ellingham spends less than 5% of her time on the affairs of the Company.

**Korm Trieu** is a Chartered Professional Accountant (CPA, CA) and holds a Bachelor of Science degree from the University of British Columbia and has spent over 20 years in corporate finance, administration and tax services, primarily in the natural resource, financial service and real estate sectors. From 2008-2011, he served as Vice President Finance for Sprott Resource Lending Corp. where he oversaw the Finance and Administration departments of a natural resource lending company. Mr. Trieu spends approximately all of his business time on the affairs of the Company and Almadex Minerals Limited of which he is also the Chief Financial Officer.

**Douglas McDonald** holds a Bachelor of Commerce degree and an M.A. Sc. specializing in mineral economics from the University of British Columbia and has over 20 years of experience in the resource, foreign trade and resource policy arenas. Prior to joining Almaden, he worked with an investment dealer where he advised numerous mineral resource companies regarding M&A opportunities and assisted them in accessing capital markets. He also spent 5 years as a Foreign Service officer with the Canadian government, where he focused on international trade issues, primarily concerning their impact on the resources industry. Mr. McDonald spends all of his business time on the affairs of the Company and Almadex Minerals Limited of which he is also a director and the Vice President, Corporate Development.



There are no arrangements or understandings with any two or more directors or executive officers pursuant to which any such person was selected as a director or executive officer. Duane Poliquin, Chairman of the Board and Director, is the father of Morgan Poliquin, President, Chief Executive Officer and Director.

During Fiscal 2017, the Chairman was remunerated at his base salary of \$240,000 per annum and the Chief Executive Officer was remunerated at his base salary of \$305,000 per annum. The Chief Executive Officer's employment contract includes terms for two additional successive terms of 24 months each (the "Extended Term") ending December 31, 2018. Effective December 31, 2015, the Hawk Mountain Resources Ltd. contract was terminated by mutual consent with the Company and the Chairman entered into a new employment contract directly with the Company. The new employment contract includes a base salary of \$240,000 per annum and has an effective date of January 1, 2016. It has an initial two-year term and is renewable for two additional successive terms of 24 months each (the "Extended Term") ending December 31, 2021.

During Fiscal 2017, the Chief Financial Officer ("CFO") was remunerated at his base salary of \$203,500, and the Vice President, Corporate Development ("VP") was remunerated at his base salary of \$192,500 per annum. Each of the CFO's and VP's employment agreements have indefinite terms.

Under an Administrative Services Agreement between the Company and Almadex Minerals Limited, the Company provides management services to Almadex. Almadex compensates the Company 30% of any shared personnel remuneration and office overhead expenses. Therefore, Almadex currently recovers 30% of the contractual compensation amounts for the Chairman, Chief Executive Officer, Chief Financial Officer and Vice President, Corporate Development.

All non-management Directors are to be compensated \$12,000 yearly and the Chairs of the Audit Committee and Compensation, Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee be compensated \$5,000 yearly, effective January 1, 2017. The Compensation Committee also recommended that, with respect to Director stock options, up to 250,000 options be granted to each non-management Director. Directors are entitled to reimbursement for reasonable travel and other out-of-pocket expenses incurred in connection with attendance at meetings of the Board of Directors. The Board of Directors may award special remuneration to any director undertaking any special services on behalf of the Company other than services ordinarily required of a director. Other than indicated below no director received any compensation for his services as a director, including committee participation and/or special assignments, or will receive compensation on termination.

Total compensation paid by the Company directly and/or indirectly to all directors and executive officers during Fiscal 2017 was \$883,400 (Fiscal 2016 - \$796,475) after recovery by the Company of 30% of executive officer compensation pursuant to the terms of the Administrative Services Agreement between the Company and Almadex Minerals Limited.



Table No. 7

## Summary Compensation Table

Name and Principle Position	Fiscal Year	Annual Compensation			Long-Term Compensation Awards			
		Salary <sup>(1)</sup>	Bonus	Other Annual Compensation	Stock Awards	SARS Granted (#)	LTIP Payouts	All Other Compensation
Duane Poliquin	2017	\$168,000	Nil	Nil	Nil	715,000	Nil	Nil
Chairman of the Board & Director	2016	\$168,000	Nil	Nil	Nil	550,000	Nil	Nil
Morgan Poliquin	2015	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	485,000	Nil	\$193,333 <sup>(2)</sup>
	2017	\$213,500	\$85,400	Nil	Nil	1,365,000	Nil	Nil
President, Chief Executive Officer & Director	2016	\$185,500	\$92,750	Nil	Nil	700,000	Nil	Nil
	2015	\$231,875	Nil	Nil	Nil	965,000	Nil	Nil
Jack McCleary	2017	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	332,000	Nil	\$17,000 <sup>(3)(5)</sup>
Director	2016	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	218,000	Nil	\$10,000 <sup>(3)(5)</sup>
	2015	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	207,000	Nil	\$10,000 <sup>(3)(5)</sup>
Joseph Montgomery	2017	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil
Former Director <sup>(8)</sup>	2016	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	\$7,000 <sup>(3)</sup>
	2015	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	145,000	Nil	\$7,000 <sup>(3)</sup>
Gerald G. Carlson	2017	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	290,000	Nil	\$12,000 <sup>(3)</sup>
Director	2016	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	100,000	Nil	\$7,000 <sup>(3)</sup>
	2015	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	237,000	Nil	\$7,000 <sup>(3)</sup>
Barry W. Smee	2017	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil
Former Director <sup>(7)</sup>	2016	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil

Edgar Filing: ALMADEN MINERALS LTD - Form 20-F

	2015	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	\$7,000 <sup>(3)</sup>
Mark T. Brown								
Director	2017	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	457,000	Nil	\$17,000 <sup>(3)(4)</sup>
	2016	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	68,000	Nil	\$10,000 <sup>(3)(4)</sup>
	2015	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	232,000	Nil	\$11,200 <sup>(3)(4)(6)</sup>
William J. Worrall								
Director	2017	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	215,000	Nil	\$12,000 <sup>(3)</sup>
	2016	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	5,000	Nil	\$7,000 <sup>(3)</sup>
	2015	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	145,000	Nil	\$7,000 <sup>(3)</sup>
David Strang <sup>(9)</sup>								
Director	2017	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	100,000	Nil	\$12,000 <sup>(3)</sup>
	2016	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	400,000	Nil	Nil
Korm Trieu								
Chief Financial Officer	2017	\$142,450	\$35,613	Nil	Nil	290,000	Nil	Nil
	2016	\$129,500	\$38,850	Nil	Nil	150,000	Nil	Nil
	2015	\$161,875	Nil	Nil	Nil	145,000	Nil	Nil
Douglas McDonald								
Vice President, Corporate Development	2017	\$134,750	\$33,688	Nil	Nil	275,000	Nil	Nil
	2016	\$122,500	\$18,375	Nil	Nil	170,000	Nil	Nil
	2015	\$153,125	Nil	Nil	Nil	130,000	Nil	Nil

Since the effectiveness of the Plan of Arrangement with Almadex on July 31, 2015, Almadex has compensated the (1) Company 30% of any shared personnel's fees and/or wages. The above table reflects only the compensation for each individual paid by Almaden after recovery of such 30% from Almadex.

For geological services provided to the Company and general and administrative services provided by Hawk (2) Mountain Resources Ltd., a private company of which Duane Poliquin is a shareholder. Effective December 31, 2015, the Hawk Mountain Resources Ltd. contract was terminated by mutual agreement.

(3) Director's fees.

(4) Audit Committee Chairman's fees.

(5) Compensation Committee Chairman's fees.

(6) For administrative services provided by Pacific Opportunity Capital Ltd., a company controlled by Mark T. Brown and his family.

(7) Barry Smee resigned as a Director of the Company effective January 31, 2015.

(8) Joseph Montgomery resigned as a Director of the Company effective August 8, 2016.

(9) David Strang commenced as a Director of the Company effective August 8, 2016.



### ***Remuneration on Termination***

The Company has the following termination clauses within its executive employment contracts.

#### **(1) Chairman**

The Company entered into a new Executive Employment Contract (the “DP Agreement”) dated January 1, 2016, as amended by Amending Agreement dated April 1, 2016 (the “DP Agreement”) between the Company and Duane Poliquin (the “Executive” under the DP Agreement) which replaces an expired Executive Compensation Contract dated January 29, 2013 (the “HMR Agreement”) between the Company and Hawk Mountain Resources Ltd. (“Management Company”), a private company of which Duane Poliquin (the “Executive” under the HMR Agreement) is a shareholder, which was terminated by mutual agreement on December 31, 2015. The DP Agreement will terminate or may be terminated for any one of the following reasons:

- (a) Voluntarily by the Executive, upon at least three (3) months prior written notice of termination by the Executive to the Company; or
- (b) without Cause, upon at least three (3) months prior written notice of termination by the Company to the Executive; or
- (c) by the Company for Cause; or
- (d) upon the death or disability of the Executive; or
- (e) upon retirement by the Executive.

#### **Termination by the Executive Voluntarily or by the Company for Cause**

If the Executive shall voluntarily terminate employment under the DP Agreement or if the employment of the Executive thereunder is terminated by the Company for Cause, then all compensation and benefits as theretofore provided shall terminate immediately upon the effective date of termination and no special severance compensation will be paid.

Cause to terminate the Executive’s employment under the DP Agreement shall mean:

- (a) the repeated and demonstrated failure by the Executive to perform the Executive’s material duties under the DP Agreement, after demand for substantial performance is delivered by the Company to the Executive that specifically identifies the manner in which the Company believes the Executive has not substantially performed by

- the Executive under the DP Agreement; or
- (b) the willful engagement by the Executive in misconduct which is materially injurious to the Company, monetarily or otherwise; or
  - (c) any other willful violation by the Executive of the provisions of the DP Agreement; or
  - (d) the Executive is convicted of a criminal offence involving fraud or dishonesty.

#### **Termination by the Company Without Cause**

If the Company shall terminate the Executive's employment under the DP Agreement for any reason except for Cause or Disability then, upon the effective date of termination, the Company shall pay the Executive in one lump sum an amount equal to two (2) times the Executive's then current Base Salary, less all statutory withholdings and deductions. All the benefits theretofore provided to the Executive shall be continued as if the Executive was still an employee of the Company for a period of twelve (12) months from the date of termination or until equal or better benefits are provided by a new employer, whichever shall first occur.

#### **Termination by Death or Disability**

If the Executive dies or becomes disabled before the Executive's employment is otherwise terminated, the Company shall pay the Executive or the Executive's estate, an amount of compensation equal to six (6) months of the Executive's then current Base Salary and all the benefits theretofore provided to the Executive shall be continued, for a period of six (6) months from the date of Death or Disability as if the Executive were still an employee of the Company. If such termination is due to the Executive's Death, payment shall be made in one lump sum to the Executive's Designate within 60 days of the Executive's death. If no Executive's Designate survives the Executive, the entire amount shall be paid to the Executive's estate. If such termination is due to the Executive's Disability, payment shall be made in one lump sum to the Executive within sixty (60) days of the Executive's Disability. The compensation provided under this paragraph shall be in addition to that payable from any insurance coverage providing compensation upon Death or Disability.

### Termination Following Change in Control

For purposes of the DP Agreement, a Change in Control shall be deemed to have occurred if:

any person or any person and such person's associates or affiliates, as such terms are defined in the *Securities Act* (British Columbia) (the "Act"), makes a tender, take-over or exchange offer, circulates a proxy to shareholders or

(i) takes other steps to effect a takeover of the control of the Company, whether by way of a reverse take-over, formal bid, causing the election or appointment of a majority of directors of the Company or otherwise in any manner whatsoever; or

during any period of eighteen (18) consecutive months (not including any period prior to the Effective Date), individuals who at the beginning of such period constituted the Board of Directors and any new directors, whose appointment by the Board of Directors or nomination for election by the Company's shareholders was approved

(ii) by a vote of at least three quarters (3/4) of the Board of Directors then still in office who either were directors at the beginning of the period or whose appointment or nomination for election was previously so approved, cease for any reason to constitute a majority of the Board of Directors; or

the acquisition by any person or by any person and such person's affiliates or associates, as such terms are defined in the Act, and whether directly or indirectly, of common shares of the Company at the time held by such person

(iii) and such person's affiliates and associates, totals for the first time, twenty percent (20%) or more of the outstanding common shares of the Company; or

(iv) the business or businesses of the Company for which the Executive's services are principally performed, are disposed of by the Company pursuant to a partial or complete liquidation, dissolution, consolidation or merger of the Company, or a sale or transfer of all or a significant portion of the Company's assets.

Notwithstanding any other provisions in the DP Agreement regarding termination, if any of the events described above constituting a Change in Control shall have occurred during the Term or an Extended Term, upon the termination of the Executive's employment (unless such termination is because of the Executive's Death or Disability, by the Company for Cause or by the Executive other than for "Good Reason", as defined below) the Executive shall be entitled to and will receive no later than the fifteenth (15<sup>th</sup>) day following the date of termination a lump sum payment equal to three (3) times the Executive's then current Base Salary. In addition, all benefits then applicable to the Executive shall be continued for a period of eighteen (18) months after the date of termination.

For purposes of the DP Agreement, "Good Reason" shall mean, without the Executive's express written consent, any of the following:

(i) the assignment to the Executive of any duties inconsistent with the status or authority of the Executive's office, or the Executive's removal from such position, or a substantial alteration in the nature or status of the Executive's



authorities or responsibilities from those in effect immediately prior to the Change in Control;

- (ii) a reduction by the Company of the Executive's Base Salary as in effect on the date of the DP Agreement or as the same may have been increased from time to time, or a failure by the Company to increase the Executive's Base Salary as provided for in the DP Agreement or at a rate commensurate with that of other key executives of the Company;

the relocation of the office of the Company where the Executive is employed at the time of the Change in Control (the "CIC Location") to a location more than fifty (50) miles away from the CIC Location, or the Company's (iii) requiring the Executive to be based more than fifty (50) miles away from the CIC Location (except for requiring travel on the Company's business to an extent substantially consistent with the Executive's business travel obligations prior to the Change in Control);

the failure by the Company to continue to provide the Executive with benefits at least as favourable as those enjoyed by the Executive prior to the Change in Control, the taking of any action by the Company which would directly or indirectly materially reduce any of such benefits or deprive the Executive of any material fringe benefit (iv) enjoyed by the Executive at the time of the Change in Control, or the failure by the Company to provide the Executive with the number of entitled vacation days to which the Executive has earned on the basis of years of services with the Company; or

the failure of the Company to obtain a satisfactory agreement from any successor to assume and agree to perform the DP Agreement or, if the business of the Company for which the Executive's services are principally performed (v) is sold or transferred, the purchaser or transferee of such business shall fail to agree to provide the Executive with the same or a comparable position, duties, remuneration and benefits for the Executive as provided immediately prior to the Change in Control.

Following a Change in Control during the Term, or an Extended Term, the Executive shall be entitled to terminate the Executive's employment for Good Reason.

In the event the Executive is entitled to a severance payment under the DP Agreement, then in addition to such severance payment, the Executive shall be entitled to employment search assistance to secure other comparable employment for the Executive for a period not to exceed one (1) year or until such comparable employment is found, whichever is the sooner, with fees for such assistance to be paid by the Company.

The Executive's right to receive the aforementioned payment and benefits is expressly contingent upon the signing of a waiver and release satisfactory to the Company which releases the Company and its affiliates from all claims and liabilities arising out of the Executive's employment and termination thereof and including confidentiality provisions, which waiver and release is satisfactory to the Company with respect to form, substance and timeliness.

## (2) **President & CEO**

The Executive Employment Contract dated January 29, 2013, as amended by Amending Agreement dated April 1, 2016 (the "MP Agreement") between the Company and Morgan Poliquin (the "Executive" under the MP Agreement) will terminate or may be terminated for any one of the following reasons:

- (a) voluntarily by the Executive, upon at least three (3) months prior written notice of termination by the Executive to the Company; or
- (b) without Cause, upon at least three (3) months prior written notice of termination by the Company to the Executive; or
- (c) by the Company for Cause; or
- (d) upon the death or disability of the Executive; or
- (e) upon retirement by the Executive.

**Termination by the Executive Voluntarily or by the Company for Cause**

If the Executive shall voluntarily terminate employment under the MP Agreement or if the employment of the Executive is terminated by the Company for Cause, then all compensation and benefits as theretofore provided shall terminate immediately upon the effective date of termination and no special severance compensation will be paid.

Cause to terminate the Executive's employment shall mean:

- (a) the repeated and demonstrated failure by the Executive to perform the Executive's material duties under the MP Agreement, after demand for substantial performance is delivered by the Company to the Executive that specifically identifies the manner in which the Company believes the Executive has not substantially performed the Executive's duties under the MP Agreement; or
- (b) the willful engagement by the Executive in misconduct which is materially injurious to the Company, monetarily or otherwise; or
- (c) any other willful violation by the Executive of the provisions of the MP Agreement; or
- (d) the Executive is convicted of a criminal offence involving fraud or dishonesty.

### **Termination by the Company Without Cause**

If the Company shall terminate the Executive's employment under the MP Agreement for any reason except for Cause then, upon the effective date of termination, the Company shall pay the Executive in one lump sum an amount equal to two (2) times the Executive's then current Base Salary, less all statutory withholdings and deductions. All the benefits theretofore provided to the Executive shall be continued as if the Executive was still an employee of the Company for a period of twelve (12) months from the date of termination or until equal or better benefits are provided by a new employer, whichever shall first occur.

### **Termination by Death or Disability**

If the Executive dies or becomes disabled before the Executive's employment is otherwise terminated, the Company shall pay the Executive or the Executive's estate, an amount of compensation equal to six (6) months of the Executive's then current Base Salary and all the benefits theretofore provided to the Executive shall be continued, for a period of six (6) months from the date of Death or Disability as if the Executive were still an employee of the Company. If such termination is due to the Executive's Death, payment shall be made in one lump sum to the Executive's Designate within sixty (60) days of the Executive's death. If no Executive's Designate survives the Executive, the entire amount shall be paid to the Executive's estate. If such termination is due to the Executive's Disability, payment shall be made in one lump sum to the Executive within sixty (60) days of the Executive's Disability. The compensation provided under this paragraph shall be in addition to that payable from any insurance coverage providing compensation upon Death or Disability.

### **Termination Following Change in Control**

For purposes of the MP Agreement, a Change in Control shall be deemed to have occurred if:

any person or any person and such person's associates or affiliates, as such terms are defined in the *Securities Act* (British Columbia) (the "Act"), makes a tender, take-over or exchange offer, circulates a proxy to shareholders or  
(i) takes other steps to effect a takeover of the control of the Company, whether by way of a reverse take-over, formal bid, causing the election or appointment of a majority of directors of the Company or otherwise in any manner whatsoever; or

during any period of eighteen (18) consecutive months (not including any period prior to the Effective Date), individuals who at the beginning of such period constituted the Board of Directors and any new directors, whose  
(ii) appointment by the Board of Directors or nomination for election by the Company's shareholders was approved by a vote of at least three quarters (3/4) of the Board of Directors then still in office who either were directors at the beginning of the period or whose appointment or nomination for election was previously so approved, cease for any reason to constitute a majority of the Board of Directors; or

the acquisition by any person or by any person and such person's affiliates or associates, as such terms are defined  
(iii) in the Act, and whether directly or indirectly, of common shares of the Company at the time held by such person and such person's affiliates and associates, totals for the first time, twenty percent (20%) or more of the outstanding common shares of the Company; or

the business or businesses of the Company for which the Executive's services are principally performed, are (iv) disposed of by the Company pursuant to a partial or complete liquidation, dissolution, consolidation or merger of the Company, or a sale or transfer of all or a significant portion of the Company's assets.

Notwithstanding any other provisions in the MP Agreement regarding termination, if any of the events described above constituting a Change in Control shall have occurred during the Term or an Extended Term, upon the termination of the Executive's employment (unless such termination is because of the Executive's Death or Disability, by the Company for Cause or by the Executive other than for "Good Reason", as defined below) the Executive shall be entitled to and will receive no later than the fifteenth (15<sup>th</sup>) day following the date of termination a lump sum severance payment equal to three (3) times the Executive's then current Base Salary. In addition, all benefits then applicable to the Executive shall be continued for a period of eighteen (18) months after the date of termination.

For purposes of the MP Agreement, "Good Reason" shall mean, without the Executive's express written consent, any of the following:

(i) the assignment to the Executive of any duties inconsistent with the status or authority of the Executive's office, or the Executive's removal from such position, or a substantial alteration in the nature or status of the Executive's authorities or responsibilities from those in effect immediately prior to the Change in Control;

(ii) a reduction by the Company in the Executive's Base Salary as in effect on the date of the MP Agreement or as the same may have been increased from time to time, or a failure by the Company to increase the Executive's Base Salary as provided for in the MP Agreement or at a rate commensurate with that of other key executives of the Company;

(iii) the relocation of the office of the Company where the Executive is employed at the time of the Change in Control (the "CIC Location") to a location more than fifty (50) miles away from the CIC Location, or the Company's requiring the Executive to be based more than fifty (50) miles away from the CIC Location (except for requiring travel on the Company's business to an extent substantially consistent with the Executive's business travel obligations prior to the Change in Control);

(iv) the failure by the Company to continue to provide the Executive with benefits at least as favourable as those enjoyed by the Executive prior to the Change in Control, the taking of any action by the Company which would directly or indirectly materially reduce any of such benefits or deprive the Executive of any material fringe benefit enjoyed by the Executive at the time of the Change in Control, or the failure by the Company to provide the Executive with the number of entitled vacation days to which the Executive has earned on the basis of years of service with the Company; or

(v) the failure of the Company to obtain a satisfactory agreement from any successor to assume and agree to perform the MP Agreement or, if the business of the Company for which the Executive's services are principally performed is sold or transferred, the purchaser or transferee of such business shall fail to agree to provide the Executive with

the same or a comparable position, duties, salary and benefits as provided to the Executive by the Company immediately prior to the Change in Control.

Following a Change in Control during the Term, or an Extended Term, the Executive shall be entitled to terminate the Executive's employment for Good Reason.

In the event the Executive is entitled to a severance payment under the MP Agreement, then in addition to such severance payment, the Executive shall be entitled to employment search assistance to secure other comparable employment for a period not to exceed one (1) year or until such comparable employment is found, whichever is the sooner, with fees for such assistance to be paid by the Company.

The Executive's right to receive the aforementioned payment and benefits is expressly contingent upon the signing of a waiver and release satisfactory to the Company which releases the Company and its affiliates from all claims and liabilities arising out of the Executive's employment and termination thereof and including confidentiality provisions, which waiver and release is satisfactory to the Company with respect to form, substance and timeliness.

**(3) CFO**

The Employment Agreement dated May 24, 2011 as amended April 1, 2016 (the “KT Agreement”) between the Company and Korm Trieu (the “Employee” under the KT Agreement) may be terminated for any one of the following reasons:

- (a) voluntarily by the Employee, upon at least sixty (60) days prior written notice of termination by the Employee to the Company; or
- (b) by the Company for cause; or
- (c) without cause, upon payment of twelve (12) months of the Employee’s then current Base Salary to the Employee; or
- (d) upon the physical and/or mental impairment of the Employee.

**Termination by the Employee Voluntarily or by the Company for Cause**

If the Employee shall voluntarily terminate employment under the KT Agreement or if the employment of the Employee is terminated by the Company for cause, then all compensation and benefits as theretofore provided shall terminate immediately upon the effective date of termination and no special severance compensation will be paid.

Cause to terminate the Employee’s employment shall mean:

- (a) the repeated and demonstrated failure by the Executive to perform the Employee’s material duties under the KT Agreement, after demand for substantial performance is delivered by the Company to the Employee that specifically identifies the manner in which the Company believes the Employee has not substantially performed the Employee’s duties under the KT Agreement; or
- (b) the willful engagement by the Employee in misconduct which is materially injurious to the Company, monetarily or otherwise; or
- (c) any other willful violation by the Employee of the provisions of the KT Agreement; or
- (d) the Employee is convicted of a criminal offence involving fraud or dishonesty.

**Termination by the Company Without Cause**

If the Company elects to terminate the Employee’s employment for reasons other than cause, the Company shall pay the Employee, in one lump sum or in installments at the Company’s discretion, a severance payment equal to twelve



(12) months of the Employee's then current Based Salary.

**Termination upon the physical and/or mental impairment of the Employee**

If the Company terminates the Employee's employment for physical and/or mental impairment, the Company's financial obligation to the Employee is limited to that which the Employee would otherwise receive if the Company terminated the Employee's employment for no reason.

**Termination Following Change in Control**

For purposes of the KT Agreement, a change in control shall be deemed to have occurred if:

any person or any person and such person's associates or affiliates, as such terms are defined in the *Securities Act* (British Columbia) (the "Act"), makes a tender, take-over or exchange offer, circulates a proxy to shareholders or (i) takes other steps to effect a takeover of the control of the Company, whether by way of a reverse take-over, formal bid, causing the election or appointment of a majority of directors of the Company or otherwise in any manner whatsoever; or

during any period of eighteen (18) consecutive months (not including any period prior to the Effective Date), individuals who at the beginning of such period constituted the Board of Directors and any new directors, whose appointment by the Board of Directors or nomination for election by the Company's shareholders was approved by a vote of at least three quarters (3/4) of the Board of Directors then still in office who either were directors at the beginning of the period or whose appointment or nomination for election was previously so approved, cease for any reason to constitute a majority of the Board of Directors; or

(ii) the acquisition by any person or by any person and such person's affiliates or associates, as such terms are defined in the Act, and whether directly or indirectly, of common shares of the Company at the time held by such person and such person's affiliates and associates, totals for the first time, twenty percent (20%) or more of the outstanding common shares of the Company; or

(iii) the business or businesses of the Company for which the Employee's services are principally performed, are disposed of by the Company pursuant to a partial or complete liquidation, dissolution, consolidation or merger of the Company, or a sale or transfer of all or a significant portion of the Company's assets.

Notwithstanding any other provisions in the KT Agreement regarding termination, if any of the events described above constituting a Change in Control shall have occurred during the course of the KT Agreement, upon the termination of the Employee's employment (unless such termination is because of the Employee's Death or Disability, by the Company for cause or by the Employee other than for "Good Reason", as defined below) the Employee shall be entitled to and will receive no later than the fifteenth (15<sup>th</sup>) day following the date of termination a lump sum severance payment equal to two (2) times the Employee's then current Base Salary.

For purposes of the KT Agreement, "Good Reason" shall mean, without the Employee's express written consent, any of the following:

(i) the assignment to the Employee of any duties inconsistent with the status or authority of the Employee's office, or the Employee's removal from such position, or a substantial alteration in the nature or status of the Employee's authorities or responsibilities from those in effect immediately prior to the Change in Control;

(ii) a reduction by the Company in the Employee's Base Salary as in effect on the date of the KT Agreement or as the same may have been increased from time to time, or a failure by the Company to increase the Employee's Base Salary as provided for in the KT Agreement or at a rate commensurate with that of other key employees of the Company;

(iii) the relocation of the office of the Company where the Employee is employed at the time of the Change in Control (the "CIC Location") to a location more than fifty (50) miles away from the CIC Location, or the Company's requiring the Employee to be based more than fifty (50) miles away from the CIC Location (except for requiring travel on the Company's business to an extent substantially consistent with the Employee's business travel obligations prior to the Change in Control);

(iv) the failure by the Company to continue to provide the Employee with benefits at least as favourable as those enjoyed by the Employee prior to the Change in Control, the taking of any action by the Company which would directly or indirectly materially reduce any of such benefits or deprive the Employee of any material fringe benefit enjoyed by the Employee at the time of the Change in Control, or the failure by the Company to provide the Employee with the number of entitled vacation days to which the Employee has earned on the basis of years of service with the Company; or

(v) the failure of the Company to obtain a satisfactory agreement from any successor to assume and agree to perform the KT Agreement or, if the business of the Company for which the Employee's services are principally performed is sold or transferred, the purchaser or transferee of such business shall fail to agree to provide the Employee with the same or a comparable position, duties, salary and benefits as provided to the Employee by the Company immediately prior to the Change in Control.

Following a Change in Control during the course of the KT Agreement, the Employee shall be entitled to terminate the Employee's employment for Good Reason.

The Employee's right to receive the aforementioned payment and benefits is expressly contingent upon the signing of a waiver and release satisfactory to the Company which releases the Company and its affiliates from all claims and liabilities arising out of the Employee's employment and termination thereof and including confidentiality provisions, which waiver and release is satisfactory to the Company with respect to form, substance and timeliness.

**(4) Vice President, Corporate Development**

The Employment Agreement dated September 22, 2014 as amended April 1, 2016 (the "DM Agreement") between the Company and Douglas McDonald (the "Employee" under the DM Agreement) may be terminated for any one of the following reasons:

- (a) voluntarily by the Employee, upon at least sixty (60) days prior written notice of termination by the Employee to the Company; or
- (b) by the Company for cause; or
- (c) without cause, upon payment of twelve (12) months of the Employee's then current Base Salary to the Employee; or
- (d) upon the physical and/or mental impairment of the Employee.

**Termination by the Employee Voluntarily or by the Company for Cause**

If the Employee shall voluntarily terminate employment under the DM Agreement or if the employment of the Employee is terminated by the Company for cause, then all compensation and benefits as theretofore provided shall terminate immediately upon the effective date of termination and no special severance compensation will be paid.

Cause to terminate the Employee's employment shall mean:

- (a) the repeated and demonstrated failure by the Employee to perform the Employee's material duties under the DM Agreement, after demand for substantial performance is delivered by the Company to the Employee that specifically identifies the manner in which the Company believes the Employee has not substantially performed the Employee's duties under the DM Agreement; or
- (b) the willful engagement by the Employee in misconduct which is materially injurious to the Company, monetarily or otherwise; or

- (c) any other willful violation by the Employee of the provisions of the DM Agreement; or
- (d) the Employee is convicted of a criminal offence involving fraud or dishonesty.

### **Termination by the Company Without Cause**

If the Company elects to terminate the Employee's employment for reasons other than cause, the Company shall pay the Employee, in one lump sum or in installments at the Company's discretion, a severance payment equal to twelve (12) months of the Employee's then current Base Salary.

### **Termination upon the physical and/or mental impairment of the Employee**

If the Company terminates the Employee's employment for physical and/or mental impairment, the Company's financial obligation to the Employee is limited to that which the Employee would otherwise receive if the Company terminated the Employee's employment for no reason.

## Termination Following Change in Control

For purposes of the DM Agreement, a change in control shall be deemed to have occurred if:

any person or any person and such person's associates or affiliates, as such terms are defined in the *Securities Act* (British Columbia) (the "Act"), makes a tender, take-over or exchange offer, circulates a proxy to shareholders or (i) takes other steps to effect a takeover of the control of the Company, whether by way of a reverse take-over, formal bid, causing the election or appointment of a majority of directors of the Company or otherwise in any manner whatsoever; or

(ii) during any period of eighteen (18) consecutive months (not including any period prior to the Effective Date), individuals who at the beginning of such period constituted the Board of Directors and any new directors, whose appointment by the Board of Directors or nomination for election by the Company's shareholders was approved by a vote of at least three quarters (3/4) of the Board of Directors then still in office who either were directors at the beginning of the period or whose appointment or nomination for election was previously so approved, cease for any reason to constitute a majority of the Board of Directors; or

(iii) the acquisition by any person or by any person and such person's affiliates or associates, as such terms are defined in the Act, and whether directly or indirectly, of common shares of the Company at the time held by such person and such person's affiliates and associates, totals for the first time, twenty percent (20%) or more of the outstanding common shares of the Company; or

(iv) the business or businesses of the Company for which the Employee's services are principally performed, are disposed of by the Company pursuant to a partial or complete liquidation, dissolution, consolidation or merger of the Company, or a sale or transfer of all or a significant portion of the Company's assets.

Notwithstanding any other provisions in the DM Agreement regarding termination, if any of the events described above constituting a Change in Control shall have occurred during the course of the DM Agreement, upon the termination of the Employee's employment (unless such termination is because of the Employee's Death or Disability, by the Company for cause or by the Employee other than for "Good Reason", as defined below) the Employee shall be entitled to and will receive no later than the fifteenth (15<sup>th</sup>) day following the date of termination a lump sum severance payment equal to two (2) times the Employee's then current Base Salary.

For purposes of the DM Agreement, "Good Reason" shall mean, without the Employee's express written consent, any of the following:

(i) the assignment to the Employee of any duties inconsistent with the status or authority of the Employee's office, or the Employee's removal from such position, or a substantial alteration in the nature or status of the Employee's

authorities or responsibilities from those in effect immediately prior to the Change in Control;

(ii) a reduction by the Company in the Employee's Base Salary as in effect on the date of the DM Agreement or as the same may have been increased from time to time, or a failure by the Company to increase the Employee's Base Salary as provided for in the DM Agreement or at a rate commensurate with that of other key employees of the Company;

(iii) the relocation of the office of the Company where the Employee is employed at the time of the Change in Control (the "CIC Location") to a location more than fifty (50) miles away from the CIC Location, or the Company's requiring the Employee to be based more than fifty (50) miles away from the CIC Location (except for requiring travel on the Company's business to an extent substantially consistent with the Employee's business travel obligations prior to the Change in Control);

(iv) the failure by the Company to continue to provide the Employee with benefits at least as favourable as those enjoyed by the Employee prior to the Change in Control, the taking of any action by the Company which would directly or indirectly materially reduce any of such benefits or deprive the Employee of any material fringe benefit enjoyed by the Employee at the time of the Change in Control, or the failure by the Company to provide the Employee with the number of entitled vacation days to which the Employee has earned on the basis of years of service with the Company; or

the failure of the Company to obtain a satisfactory agreement from any successor to assume and agree to perform the DM Agreement or, if the business of the Company for which the Employee's services are principally performed (v) is sold or transferred, the purchaser or transferee of such business shall fail to agree to provide the Employee with the same or a comparable position, duties, salary and benefits as provided to the Employee by the Company immediately prior to the Change in Control.

Following a Change in Control during the course of the DM Agreement, the Employee shall be entitled to terminate the Employee's employment for Good Reason.

The Employee's right to receive the aforementioned payment and benefits is expressly contingent upon the signing of a waiver and release satisfactory to the Company which releases the Company and its affiliates from all claims and liabilities arising out of the Employee's employment and termination thereof and including confidentiality provisions, which waiver and release is satisfactory to the Company with respect to form, substance and timeliness.

### *Stock options*

Incentive stock options to purchase securities from the Company are granted to directors, executive officers, employees and consultants of the Company on terms and conditions acceptable to the regulatory authorities in Canada, notably the Toronto Stock Exchange, and in accordance with the requirements of the applicable Canadian securities commissions' requirements and regulations.

The Company has a formal written stock option plan ("Plan") which permits the issuance of up to 10% of the Company's issued share capital from time to time during the term of the Plan and provides that stock options may be granted from time to time provided that incentive stock options in favor of any consultant or person providing investor relations services cannot exceed 2% in any 12 month period. No incentive stock option granted under the Plan is transferable by the optionee other than by will or the laws of descent and distribution, and each incentive stock option is exercisable during the lifetime of the optionee only by such optionee and by the optionee's personal representatives in the event of death for a period ending on the earlier of the expiry date of the option and twelve months after the date of death.

The exercise price of all incentive stock options granted under the Plan is determined in accordance with Toronto Stock Exchange guidelines and cannot be less than the Market Price on the date of the grant. Market Price is the volume weighted average trading price of the shares on the Toronto Stock Exchange for the five trading days immediately preceding the date of the grant. The maximum term of each incentive stock option is five years. Options granted to consultants or persons providing Investor Relations Activities (as defined in the Plan) shall vest in stages with no more than ¼ of such options being exercisable in any three month period. All options granted during Fiscal 2017, Fiscal 2016 and Fiscal 2015 vested on the date granted. Under the requirements of the Toronto Stock Exchange, all unallocated options under the Plan must be approved by the Board of Directors, including a majority of the unrelated directors and by the shareholders every three years after the institution of the Plan. Insiders and affiliates of insiders entitled to receive a benefit under the Plan are not entitled to vote for such approval.



The names and titles of the directors and executive officers of the Company to whom outstanding stock options have been granted and the number of common shares subject to such options as of March 28, 2018 are set forth in Table No. 8, as well as the number of options granted to directors, executive officers, employees and contractors as a group.

**Table No. 8****Stock Options Outstanding**

Name	Number of Options Outstanding	Exercise Price CDN\$	Expiry Date
Duane Poliquin	500,000	\$1.44	6/8/2018
Chairman of the Board & Director	50,000	1.85	9/15/2018
	100,000	0.72	12/11/2018
	100,000	1.99	5/4/2019
	300,000	1.34	7/2/2019
	165,000	1.40	9/19/2019
	150,000	1.25	9/30/2020
Morgan Poliquin	700,000	1.44	6/8/2018
President, Director &	300,000	0.72	12/11/2018
Chief Executive Officer	250,000	1.04	1/2/2019
	150,000	1.32	7/2/2019
	350,000	1.34	7/2/2019
	315,000	1.40	9/19/2019
	500,000	1.53	4/30/2020
	200,000	1.25	9/30/2020
Jack McCleary	100,000	1.44	6/8/2018
Director	68,000	1.91	8/9/2018
	50,000	1.85	9/15/2018
	207,000	1.35	3/17/2019
	25,000	1.99	5/4/2019
	100,000	1.25	9/30/2020
Gerald G. Carlson	50,000	1.44	6/8/2018
Director	50,000	1.85	9/15/2018
	72,000	0.72	12/11/2018
	50,000	1.04	1/2/2019
	25,000	1.99	5/4/2019
	50,000	1.34	7/2/2019
	115,000	1.40	9/19/2019
	100,000	1.25	9/30/2020
Mark T. Brown	50,000	1.44	6/8/2018
Director	18,000	1.91	8/9/2018
	25,000	1.04	1/2/2019
	25,000	1.99	5/4/2019
	117,000	1.34	7/2/2019
	115,000	1.40	9/19/2019
	100,000	1.14	4/30/2020
	100,000	1.25	9/30/2020

Edgar Filing: ALMADEN MINERALS LTD - Form 20-F

William J. Worrall	250,000	1.46	6/18/2018
Director	5,000	1.91	8/9/2018
	30,000	0.72	12/11/2018
	115,000	1.40	9/19/2019
	100,000	1.25	9/30/2020
David Strang	400,000	1.91	08/09//2018
Director	100,000	1.25	9/30/2020
Korm Trieu	75,000	1.74	4/4/2018
Chief Financial Officer	150,000	1.44	6/8/2018
	30,000	0.72	12/11/2018
	50,000	1.04	1/2/2019
	75,000	1.89	6/12/2019
	115,000	1.40	9/19/2019
	100,000	1.25	9/30/2020
Douglas McDonald	20,000	1.44	6/8/2018
Vice President, Corporate Development	30,000	0.72	12/11/2018
	150,000	1.68	12/11/2018
	75,000	1.84	5/19/2019
	100,000	1.40	9/19/2019
	100,000	1.25	9/30/2020
Total Directors/Officers (9 persons)	7,812,000		
Total Employees/Consultants (14 persons)	1,478,000		
Total Directors/Officers/Employees/Consultants	9,290,000		

No funds were set aside or accrued by the Company during Fiscal 2017 to provide pension, retirement or similar benefits for directors or executive officers.

## General

The Toronto Stock Exchange (“TSX”) and the applicable Canadian securities law and regulation require that the Company comply with National Instrument 58-101 (*Disclosure of Corporate Governance Practices*) or any replacement of that instrument. The Company is also, under applicable Canadian securities law and regulation, required to comply with National Policy 58-201 (*Corporate Governance Guidelines*). National Instrument 58-101 and National Policy 58-201 (for convenience referred to in the aggregate as the “guidelines”) deal with matters such as the constitution and independence of corporate boards, their functions, the effectiveness and education of the board members and other matters. The Company’s statement as to compliance with the guidelines and its approach to corporate governance is set forth below.

## Corporate Governance

The Company’s Board and management are committed to the highest standards of corporate governance. The Company’s corporate governance practices are in accordance with the guidelines. The Company is also cognizant of and compliant with various corporate governance requirements in Canada and is in compliance with applicable U.S. requirements.

The Company’s prime objective in directing and managing its business and affairs is to enhance shareholder value. The Company views effective corporate governance as a means of improving corporate performance and accordingly of benefit to the Company and all shareholders.

The Company also believes that director and management honesty and integrity are essential factors in ensuring good and effective corporate governance. To that end the Company’s directors have adopted various codes and policies for the Company, its directors, officers, employees and consultants. The codes and policies adopted to date are as follows: Audit Committee Charter, Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee-Responsibilities and Duties, Compensation Committee-Responsibilities and Duties, Code of Business Ethics, Code of Business Conduct and Ethics for Directors, Communications Policy, Securities Trading Policy, Whistleblowers Policy and Privacy Policy (the “Codes”). The Codes may be viewed on the Company’s website at [www.almadenminerals.com](http://www.almadenminerals.com). The Codes may also be viewed as filed on EDGAR as an exhibit to the 2005 20-F Annual Report filed with the Commission on March 30, 2006. Any amendments to the Codes or waivers of the provision of any Codes will be posted on the Company’s website within 5 business days of such amendment or waiver.

## **Executive Officer Position Descriptions**

### *Chairman of the Board ('Chairman')*

#### ***Responsibilities:***

- \_ Leads the Board of Directors of the Company and also takes a hands-on role in the Company's day-to-day management.
- \_ Helps the CEO to oversee all the operational aspects involved in running the Company, including project selection and planning.
- \_ Takes overall responsibility for the Company's direction and growth, seeking to generate significant financial gains for the shareholders.
- \_ Oversees relationships with the communities and stakeholders in the areas where the Company operates, with the intent of ensuring the Company's activities are of benefit to all.

*Chief Executive Officer ('CEO')*

**Reports to:**

The Board of Directors of the Company (the "Board")

**Function:**

Provides overall leadership and vision in developing, in concert with the Board, the strategic direction of the Company and in developing the tactics and business plans necessary to increase shareholder value.

Manages the overall business to ensure strategic and business plans are effectively implemented, the results are monitored and reported to the Board and financial and operational objectives are attained.

**Authorities, Duties and Responsibilities:**

**(a) General Functions:**

1. Provides effective leadership to the management and the employees of the Company and establishes an effective means of control and co-ordination for all operations and activities.
2. Fosters a corporate culture that promotes ethical practices, integrity and a positive work climate enabling the Company to attract, retain and motivate a diverse group of quality employees.
3. Keeps the Board fully informed on the Company's operational and financial affairs.
  4. Develops and maintains a sound, effective organization structure and plans for capable management succession, progressive employee training and development programs and reports to the Board on these matters.
5. Ensures that effective communications and appropriate relationships are maintained with the shareholders of the Company and other stakeholders.
6. Develops capital expenditure plans for approval by the Board.
7. Turns any strategic plan as may be developed by the Board into a detailed operating plan.

**(b) Strategy and Risks**

- 1.

- Develops and recommends to the Board strategic plans to ensure the Company's profitable growth and overall success. This includes updating and making changes as required and involving the Board in the early stages of developing strategy.
2. Identifies in conjunction with the other senior officers and appropriate directors of the Company the key risks with respect to the Company and its businesses and reviews such risks and strategies for managing them with the Board.
  3. Ensures that the assets of the Company are adequately safeguarded and maintained.

**(c) Exploration and Development**

Responsible for managing the day to day activities and operating management of the Company and as such shall be responsible for the design, operation and improvement of the systems that create the Company's exploration and development opportunities. The CEO accordingly shall have the primary responsibility:

- To direct and oversee all operational activities of the Company including exploration, development, mining and other such functions.
- To initiate solutions to the key business challenges of the Company.
- To participate in sourcing and negotiating financial arrangements for the further expansion and development of the Company including joint ventures, mergers, acquisitions, debt and equity financing.
- Represent and speak for the Company with shareholders, potential investors and other members of the industry.

**(d) Financial Reporting**

Oversees the quality and timeliness of financial reporting. Reports to the Board in conjunction with the CFO on the fairness and adequacy of the financial reporting of the Company to its shareholders.

***Chief Financial Officer ('CFO')***

**Reports to:**

The CEO of the Company

**Responsibilities:**

- Developing, analyzing and reviewing financial data.
- Reporting on financial performance.
- Monitoring expenditures and costs.
- Assisting the CEO in preparing budgets and in the communicating to the analyst and shareholder, community and securities regulators, the financial performance of the Company.
- Fulfilling the reporting requirements of the securities regulators, stock exchanges and shareholders.
- Monitoring filing of tax returns and payment of taxes.

The CFO shall assist the CEO in establishing effective means of control and co-ordination of the operations and activities of the Company and identifying, in conjunction with the CEO, the key risks with respect to the Company and its business and reviewing with the CEO the strategies for managing such risks and ensuring that the assets of the Company are adequately safeguarded and maintained.

The CFO, in conjunction with the CEO, shall design or supervise the design of and implement, maintain and periodically evaluate the effectiveness of internal controls to provide reasonable assurances that the financial statements of the Company are fairly presented in accordance with generally accepted financial standards and principles and that disclosure controls are in place to provide reasonable assurance that material information relating to the financial performance of the Company and any deficiencies are made known to the Audit Committee.

***Vice President, Corporate Development***

**Reports to:**



The CEO of the Company

**Responsibilities:**

The Vice President, Corporate Development is responsible for:

- Developing and managing relationships with current and prospective business partners, investment bankers, financial analysts and the media;
- Preparing and presenting comprehensive reviews and analysis of business opportunities to senior management and to the Board;
  - Managing and developing relationships with new and existing institutional investors;
  - Assisting the CEO in preparing and presenting to investors, the executive team and the Board;
- Conducting technical and financial analysis to determine the impact of growth opportunities on various metrics and to establish an execution plan as needed.

The Vice President, Corporate Development shall assist the CEO in establishing and managing relationships with key stakeholders, identifying and analysing new growth and investment opportunities, as well as the development, communication and implementation of corporate strategies related to executing the business plans of the Company.

The Vice President, Corporate Development in conjunction with the CEO shall represent the Company at industry functions to investors, both potential and existing, as well as ensure the Company is protected through due diligence activities and provide reasonable assurance as to impact of emerging business opportunities for the Company and interested parties through the use of technical and financial analyses.

## Mandate of the Board

The mandate of the Board is to supervise the management of the business and affairs of the Company and to act with a view to the best interests of the Company. In fulfilling its mandate, the Board, among other matters, is responsible for:

- (a) adopting a strategic planning process and approving, on at least an annual basis, a strategic plan, taking into account the risk and opportunities of the Company's business;
- (b) identifying the principal risks of the Company's business and implementing appropriate systems to manage such risks;
- (c) satisfying itself, to the extent reasonably feasible, of the integrity of the CEO and other executive officers (if any) and ensuring that all such officers create a culture of integrity throughout the Company and developing programs of succession planning (including appointing, training and monitoring senior management);
- (d) creating the Company's internal control and management information systems and creating appropriate policies for matters including communications, securities trading, privacy, audit, whistleblowing and codes of ethical conduct;
- (e) managing its affairs including selecting its Chair, nomination of candidates for election to the Board, constituting committees of the Board and determining director compensation; and
  - (f) engaging any necessary internal and/or external advisors.

In the Fiscal year ended December 31, 2017 there were seven (7) meetings of the Board. The frequency of meetings as well as the nature of agenda items change, depending upon the state of the Company's affairs and in light of opportunities or risks which the Company is subject to. Table No. 9 indicates the number of meetings attended by each director.

## Table No. 9

### Meetings Attended

Director	Number
Duane Poliquin	7
Morgan Poliquin	7
Jack McCleary	6
Gerald G. Carlson	5
Mark T. Brown	7
William J. Worrall	6
David Strang	5

The Chairman is the chair of meetings of the Board of directors and is not an independent director. Meetings of the independent members of the Board may be held periodically as convened by the independent Board members. In Fiscal 2017, seven (7) meetings of the independent Board members were convened.

In carrying out its mandate, the Board and each committee of the Board, relies primarily on management and its employees to provide it with regular detailed reports on the operations of the Company and its financial position. Certain members of management are also on the Board and provide the Board with direct access to information concerning their areas of responsibility. Management personnel are also regularly asked to attend Board meetings to provide information, answer questions and receive the direction of the Board. The reports and information provided to the Board enable them to monitor and manage the risks associated with the Company's operations and its compliance with legal and safety requirements, environmental issues and the financial position and liquidity of the Company.

The Board discharges its responsibilities directly and through committees. At regularly scheduled meetings, members of the Board and management discuss the broad range of matters and issues relevant to the Company's business interests and the Board is responsible for the approval of the Company's Strategic Plan. In addition, the Board receives reports from management on the Company's operational and financial performance. Between scheduled meetings, matters requiring Board authorization is effected by means of signed Consent Resolutions.

## Board Assessment

The Nomination and Corporate Governance Committee reports to the Board periodically on the evaluation of the Board's performance and that of the individual directors. The Performance of the Chief Executive Officer is evaluated by the Compensation Committee.

## Composition of the Board

The guidelines recommend that a board of directors be constituted with a majority of individuals who qualify as independent directors.

In deciding whether a particular director is independent, the Board examined the factual circumstances of each director and considered them in the context of many factors, including the definitions in the guidelines and the requirements and policies of NYSE MKT Company Guide Rules. The current Board is composed of eight members. The Board has determined that a majority of directors, namely 6 directors, are independent - Jack McCleary, David Strang, Gerald Carlson, William J. Worrall, Elaine Ellingham and Mark T. Brown. Two directors – Duane Poliquin and Morgan Poliquin – are not independent because, in addition to their being the Chairman and Chief Executive Officer/President of the Company, respectively, they each have Executive Employment Contracts with the Company and, therefore, they each have a material relationship with the Company. The basis for determination of independence is under Canadian securities instrument NI 52-110 and NYSE MKT Exchange Company Guide Rules.

The Company does not have a controlling or significant shareholder. The Board believes that the membership of the Board fairly reflects the investment in the Company by minority shareholders.

The Board considers its size and composition to be appropriate and effective for carrying out its responsibilities. However, the Board may consider adding an additional director if a suitable candidate can be found who may bring additional experience or knowledge to the Board.

## Board Committees

The Board currently has three committees the Audit Committee, the Nomination and Corporate Governance Committee and the Compensation Committee. Each member of each committee is an independent director. Each committee is responsible for determining its own rules of procedure and may, from time to time, develop written descriptions for the responsibilities of the chair of such committee. No written position descriptions have yet been developed.

Mandates of each of the committees and the Codes undergo review periodically (in some cases mandated as annually) to bring them into line with changing Canadian and U.S. securities and corporate governance requirements and to reflect amendments that may be considered appropriate to make them more effective. Any revisions to the mandates and Codes will be available on the Company's website at [www.almadenminerals.com](http://www.almadenminerals.com).

#### Audit Committee

The members of the Audit Committee are Messrs. William Worrall, Gerald Carlson and Mark T. Brown. The Audit Committee met four (4) times during Fiscal 2017. The full text of the initial Audit Committee Charter is an exhibit to the 2003 20-F Annual Report filed with the Commission on May 11, 2004. After review, the charter was altered to more properly define the functions of the Audit Committee. The revised charter is an exhibit to the 2005 20-F Annual Report filed with the Commission on March 30, 2006.

#### **Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee**

The members of the Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee are Jack McCleary, William Worrall and Gerald Carlson. The Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee met two (2) time during Fiscal 2017. The full text of the initial Corporate Governance Charter is an exhibit to the 2003 20-F Annual Report filed with the Commission on May 11, 2004. After review, the Responsibilities and Duties of the Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee were altered to more properly define the functions of the Nominating and Corporate Committee. The revised Responsibilities and Duties is an exhibit to the 2005 20-F Annual Report filed with the Commission on March 30, 2006.

### **Compensation Committee**

The members of the Compensation Committee are Jack McCleary, William Worrall, Mark T. Brown and Gerald Carlson. The Compensation Committee met four (4) times during Fiscal 2017 with Jack McCleary, Mark T. Brown and William Worrall attending all four (4) meetings and Gerald Carlson attending three (3) of the four (4) meetings. The Responsibilities and Duties of the Compensation Committee is an exhibit to the 2005 20-F Annual Report filed with the Commission on March 30, 2006.

### **Orientation and Continuing Education**

The Nomination and Corporate Governance Committee is responsible for recommending to the Board an orientation and education program for new directors.

### **Director Term Limits and other Mechanisms of Board Renewal**

The Company has not adopted term limits or other mechanisms for Board renewal. The Company does not consider it is yet appropriate to force any term limits or other mechanisms of Board renewal at this time.

### **Policies Regarding the Representation of Women on the Board**

There is currently one woman on the Company's Board representing 12.5% of the Board. The Company plans to adopt a written policy with respect to the identification and nomination of women directors (the "Diversity Policy"). The Diversity Policy will require that the Board consider diversity on the Board from a number of aspects, including but not limited to gender, age, ethnicity and cultural diversity. In addition, when assessing and identifying potential new members to join the Board or the Company's executive team, the Board will consider the current level of diversity on the Board and the executive team. As the Diversity Policy has not yet been adopted, the Company is not yet able to measure its effectiveness.

### **Consideration of the Representation of Women in the Director Identification and Selection Process**

Pursuant to the Diversity Policy, the Board will consider and evaluate the representation of women on the Board when identifying and nominating candidates for election and re-election to the Board. The Company will focus its search for new directors purely based on the qualification of potential candidates, regardless of their gender.

### **Consideration Given to the Representation of Women in Executive Officer Appointments**

Pursuant to the Diversity Policy, the Board will consider and evaluate the representation of women in the Company's executive officer positions when identifying and nominating candidates for appointment as executive officers. The Company will focus its search for new executive officers purely based on the qualification of potential candidates,

regardless of their gender.

### **The Company's Targets Regarding the Representation of Women on the Board and in Executive Officer Positions**

The Company has not established a target for the representation of women on the Board or in executive officer positions of the Company by a specific date. The Company does not think it is appropriate to set targets because the Company focuses its search for new directors and executive officers purely based on the qualification of potential candidates, regardless of their gender.

### **Number of Women on the Board and in Executive Officer Positions**

As at the date of this Form 20-F Annual Report, one of the Company's directors (representing 12.5% of the Company's eight directors) and none of the Company's executive officers are women.

### **Decisions Requiring Board Approval**

In addition to those matters which must by law be approved by the Board, management is also required to seek Board approval for any major acquisition, disposition or expenditure. Management is also required to consult with the Board before entering into any venture which is outside of the Company's existing line of business.

Changes in officers are to be approved by the Board including changes in officers of the Company's principal operating subsidiaries.

In certain circumstances it may be appropriate for an individual director to engage an outside advisor at the expense of the Company. The engagement of the outside advisor would be subject to the approval of the Nomination and Corporate Governance Committee.

## Communications and Investor Relations

The Company has adopted a Communications Policy, the purpose and aim of which is as follows:

- (a) Controls the communications between the Company and its external stakeholders;
- (b) Complies with its continuous and timely disclosure obligations;
- (c) Avoids selective disclosure of Company information;
- (d) Protects and prevents the improper use or disclosure of material information and confidential information;
- (e) Educates the Company's personnel on the appropriate use and disclosure of material information and confidential information;
- (f) Fosters and facilitates compliance with applicable laws; and
- (g) Creates formal Disclosure Officers to help achieve the above objectives.

In accordance with the Communications Policy of the Company, designated Disclosure Officers receive and respond to shareholder enquiries. Shareholder enquiries and concerns are dealt with promptly by Disclosure Officers of the Company.

## Ethical Business Conduct

The Company has adopted a Code of Business Conduct and Ethics for Directors ("Code"), a Code of Business Ethics ("COBE"), a Securities Trading Policy and a Privacy Policy. Employees and consultants are required as a term of employment or engagement to undertake to abide by the COBE. Directors are bound to observe the Code adopted by the Board.

All Directors, Officers and Employees ("Individuals") sign a Certification ("Certification") stating they have read the Code of Business Ethics policy ("Policy") of the Company and have complied with such Policy in all respects. The Certification further acknowledges that all members of the Individual's family, all other persons who live with the Individual and all holding companies and other related entities of the Individual and all such persons or companies acting on behalf of or at the request of any of the foregoing also complied with such Policy. The Certification also states that any violation of such Policy may constitute grounds for immediate suspension or dismissal.

Each director is expected and required by statute to act honestly and in good faith with a view to the best interests of the Company and to exercise the care, diligence and skill that a reasonably prudent individual would exercise in comparable circumstances and in accordance with the *Business Corporations Act* (British Columbia) and the Company's Articles.

## Employees



As of December 31, 2017, the Company operated with nine people in Canada, of which six are administrative personnel and three are exploration personnel, some of which are retained on a contractual basis. There are no full time employees in the U.S. or Mexico. None of the Company's employees are covered by a collective bargaining agreement.

***Share Ownership***

Table No. 10 lists, as of March 28, 2018, directors and executive officers who beneficially own the Company's voting securities and the amount of the Company's voting securities owned by the directors and executive officers as a group.

**Table No. 10****Shareholdings of Directors and Executive Officers**

Title of Class	Name of Beneficial Owner	Amounts and Nature of Beneficial Ownership	Percent of Class*
Common	Duane Poliquin	4,053,146 <sup>(1)(10)</sup>	3.91%
Common	Morgan Poliquin	4,467,964 <sup>(2)(10)</sup>	4.26%
Common	Jack McCleary	897,711 <sup>(3)</sup>	0.87%
Common	Gerald G. Carlson	594,700 <sup>(4)</sup>	0.58%
Common	David Strang	500,000 <sup>(5)</sup>	0.49%
Common	Mark T. Brown	595,000 <sup>(6)</sup>	0.58%
Common	William J. Worrall	554,780 <sup>(7)</sup>	0.54%
Common	Elaine Ellingham	-	-
Common	Korm Trieu	643,698 <sup>(8)</sup>	0.63%
Common	Doug McDonald	575,273 <sup>(9)</sup>	0.56%
Common	Total Directors/Officers	12,882,272	12.41%

<sup>(1)</sup> Of these shares 1,365,000 represent currently exercisable stock options, 50,000 represent currently exercisable warrants.

<sup>(2)</sup> Of these shares 2,765,000 represent currently exercisable stock options. 83,600 of these shares are held indirectly through Kohima Pacific Gold Corp., a company owned by Mr. Poliquin.

<sup>(3)</sup> Of these shares 550,000 represent currently exercisable stock options. 38,500 of these shares are held indirectly by Connemara Resource Ventures Ltd., a company owned by Mr. McCleary.

<sup>(4)</sup> Of these shares 512,000 represent currently exercisable stock options.

<sup>(5)</sup> Of these shares 500,000 represent currently exercisable stock options.

<sup>(6)</sup> Of these shares 550,000 represent currently exercisable stock options. 20,000 of these shares are held indirectly by Pacific Opportunity Capital Ltd. ("POC"), a company controlled by Mr. Brown and his family.

<sup>(7)</sup> Of these shares 500,000 represent currently exercisable stock options.

<sup>(8)</sup> Of these shares 595,000 represent currently exercisable stock options. 7,500 of these shares are held indirectly by Mr. Trieu's wife.

<sup>(9)</sup> Of these shares, 475,000 represent currently exercisable stock options. 7,500 of those shares are held indirectly by Shari Investments, an entity controlled by Mr. McDonald.

<sup>(10)</sup> Pursuant to a Voting Trust Agreement (Exhibit 3 to this 20-F Annual Report), Duane Poliquin and Morgan Poliquin jointly hold voting power over 6,979,275 of the Company's common shares otherwise legally and beneficially owned by Mr. Ernesto Echavarria, as well as over any common shares issued to Mr. Echavarria upon the exercise of his warrants to acquire an additional 126,100 of the Company's common shares.

\*Based on 102,199,625 shares outstanding as of March 28, 2018 and stock options and warrants held by each beneficial owner.

**Item 7. Major Shareholders and Related Party Transactions**

The Company is a publicly owned Canadian company, the shares of which are owned by residents of the U.S., residents of Canada and other foreign residents. To the extent known by the directors and executive officers of the Company, the Company is not directly or indirectly owned or controlled by another company. Table No. 11 lists, as of March 28, 2018, the only persons or companies beneficially owning more than 5% of the Company's voting securities.

**Table No. 11****Shareholdings of Beneficial Owners**

<b>Title of Class</b>	<b>Name of Beneficial Owner</b>	<b>Amounts and Nature of Beneficial Ownership</b>	<b>Percent of Class*</b>
Common	Duane Poliquin	4,053,146 <sup>(1)(3)</sup>	3.91%
Common	Morgan Poliquin	4,467,964 <sup>(2)(3)</sup>	4.26%

<sup>(1)</sup> Of these shares 1,365,000 represent currently exercisable stock options, 50,000 represent currently exercisable warrants.

<sup>(2)</sup> Of these shares 2,765,000 represent currently exercisable stock options. 83,600 of these shares are held indirectly through Kohima Pacific Gold Corp., a company owned by Mr. Poliquin.

<sup>(3)</sup> Pursuant to a Voting Trust Agreement (Exhibit 3 to this 20-F Annual Report), Duane Poliquin and Morgan Poliquin jointly hold voting power over 6,979,275 of the Company's common shares otherwise legally and beneficially owned by Mr. Ernesto Echavarria, as well as over any common shares issued to Mr. Echavarria upon the exercise of his warrants to acquire an additional 126,100 of the Company's common shares.

\*Based on 102,199,625 shares outstanding as of March 28, 2018 and stock options and warrants held by each beneficial owner.

***Related party transactions***

Certain geological, technical, professional and general and administrative services were provided to the Company by the Chairman and/or a company controlled by Duane Poliquin operated through Hawk Mountain Resources Ltd., a private company of which Duane Poliquin is a shareholder.

The costs of such services for Fiscal 2017 ended December 31, 2017 were \$168,000, Fiscal 2016 ended December 31, 2016 were \$168,000, and Fiscal 2015 ended December 31, 2015 were \$193,333.

Certain officers and directors of the Company are also officers or directors of companies with which the Company has agreements and may not be considered at arm's-length to such agreements. However, any agreement or any to be negotiated between the Company and such other companies has been or will be approved by directors of the Company, in accordance with the common law and the provisions of the *Business Corporations Act* (British Columbia).

(a)

***Compensation of key management personnel***

Key management includes members of the Board, the Chairman, the President and Chief Executive Officer, the Chief Financial Officer and the Vice President, Corporate Development. The aggregate compensation paid or payable to key management for services is as follows, after recovery of 30% of executive officer compensation from Almadex Minerals Limited:

	February 28, 2018	December 31, 2017	December 31, 2016	December 31, 2015
Salaries and benefits	\$ 156,667	\$ 813,400	\$ 755,475	\$ 740,208 (i)
Share-based payments	144,000	2,216,170	1,537,060	725,165
Directors' fees	70,000	70,000	41,000	48,000
	\$ 370,667	\$ 3,099,570	\$ 2,333,535	\$ 1,513,373

For the year ended December 31, 2015, Hawk Mountain Resources Ltd. ("Hawk Mountain"), a private company of (i) which the Chairman of the Company is a shareholder, was paid \$193,333 for geological services provided to the Company and is recorded in general exploration expenses.

(b) *Almadex Minerals Limited (“Almadex”)*

Effective August 1, 2015, approximately 30% of administrative expenses is recovered from Almadex pursuant to the Administrative Service Agreement.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company received \$499,798 (2016 - \$464,498; 2015 - \$181,405) from Almadex for administrative services fees included in other income.

At December 31, 2017, the Company accrued \$153,038 (2016 - \$63,429) payable to Almadex for drilling equipment rental services in Mexico.

At December 31, 2017, included in accounts receivable is \$195,551 (2016 - \$149,429) due from Almadex in relation to administrative expenses recoveries.

(c) *Other related party transactions*

During the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company paid a company controlled by a Mark Brown \$Nil (2016 - \$Nil; 2015 - \$1,200) for administrative services provided to the Company.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company employed the Chairman’s daughter for a salary of \$43,800 less statutory deductions (2016 - \$38,800; 2015 - \$43,225) for marketing and administrative services provided to the Company.

Other than as disclosed above, there have been no transactions or proposed transactions, which have materially affected or will materially affect the Registrant in which any director, executive officer, or beneficial holder of more than 10% of the outstanding common stock, or any of their respective relatives, spouses, associates or affiliates has had or will have any direct or material indirect interest. As stated above, management believes the transactions referenced above were on terms at least as favorable to the Company as the Company could have obtained from unaffiliated parties.

**Item 8. Financial Information**

The financial statements as required under Item 8 are attached hereto and found immediately following the text of this Annual Report.

### ***Legal Proceedings***

The Company knows of no material, active or pending legal proceedings against it; nor is the Company involved as a plaintiff in any material proceeding or pending litigation.

### ***Dividends***

The Company has not declared any dividends since inception and does not anticipate that it will do so in the foreseeable future. The present policy of the Company is to retain future earnings for use in its operations and the expansion of its business.

### ***Significant Changes***

There have been no significant changes of financial condition since the most recent audited financial statements included within this Annual Report on Form 20-F.

## **Item 9. Offer and Listing of Securities**

The Company's common shares trade on The Toronto Stock Exchange ("TSX") in Toronto, Ontario, Canada having the symbol "AMM" and on the NYSE MKT (formerly the American Stock Exchange) in New York, New York, U.S.A. having the symbol "AAU" and CUSIP #020283107.

The Company's common shares commenced trading on February 11, 2002 on TSX and December 19, 2005 on the American Stock Exchange, now the NYSE MKT.

Table No. 12 lists the high and low prices for the shares of Almaden Minerals Ltd. common stock on NYSE MKT for the preceding five years. Table No. 13 lists the high and low prices for shares of Almaden Minerals Ltd. common stock on TSX for the preceding five years.

**Table No. 12**

**Almaden Minerals Ltd.**

**Stock Trading Activity**

**NYSE MKT**

**(expressed in US\$)**

Year Ended	High	Low
12/31/2017	\$1.75	\$0.71
12/31/2016	1.88	0.50
12/31/2015	1.27	0.48
12/31/2014	1.94	0.86
12/31/2013	3.25	1.03

**Table No. 13**

**Almaden Minerals Ltd.**

**Stock Trading Activity**

**The Toronto Stock Exchange**

**(expressed in C\$)**

Year Ended	High	Low
12/31/2017	\$2.33	\$0.92
12/31/2016	2.44	0.73
12/31/2015	1.57	0.65
12/31/2014	2.11	1.02
12/31/2013	3.19	1.08

Table No. 14 lists the quarterly high and low prices for shares of Almaden Minerals Ltd. common stock on NYSE MKT for the two most recent full financial years. Table No. 15 lists the quarterly high and low prices for shares of Almaden Minerals Ltd. common stock on TSX for the two most recent full financial years.



**Table No. 14**

**Almaden Minerals Ltd.**

**Stock Trading Activity**

**NYSE MKT**

**(expressed in US\$)**

Quarter Ended	High	Low
31/12/2017	\$1.24	\$0.71
30/09/2017	1.32	1.10
30/06/2017	1.75	1.130
31/03/2017	1.30	0.95
12/31/2016	1.54	0.75
9/30/2016	1.88	1.30
6/30/2016	1.67	0.65
3/31/2016	0.81	0.50

**Table No. 15**

**Almaden Minerals Ltd.**

**Stock Trading Activity**

**The Toronto Stock Exchange**

**(expressed in C\$)**

Quarter Ended	High	Low
12/31/2017	\$1.56	\$0.92
30/09/2017	1.68	1.34
30/06/2017	2.33	1.51
31/03/2017	1.70	1.27
12/31/2016	1.97	1.01
9/30/2016	2.44	1.70
6/30/2016	2.17	0.88
3/31/2016	1.12	0.73

Table No.16 lists the high and low prices for shares of Almaden Minerals Ltd. common stock on NYSE MKT for the most recent six months. Table No. 17 lists the high and low prices for shares of Almaden Minerals Ltd. common stock on TSX for the most recent six months.

**Table No. 16**

**Almaden Minerals Ltd.**

**Stock Trading Activity**

**NYSE MKT**

**(expressed in US\$)**

Month Ended	High	Low
2/28/2018	\$0.97	\$0.82
1/31/2018	1.05	0.87
12/31/2017	1.05	0.71
11/30/2017	1.06	0.85
10/31/2017	1.24	1.00
9/30/2017	1.32	1.15

**Table No. 17****Almaden Minerals Ltd.****Stock Trading Activity****The Toronto Stock Exchange****(expressed in C\$)**

Month Ended	High	Low
2/28/2018	\$1.20	\$1.05
1/31/2018	1.35	1.07
12/31/2017	1.34	0.92
11/30/2017	1.35	1.09
10/31/2017	1.56	1.26
9/30/2017	1.61	1.34

The closing price of the Company's common stock was \$0.85 (US\$) on the NYSE MKT and \$1.09 (C\$) on TSX on February 28, 2018.

In recent years, securities markets in Canada and the U.S. have experienced a high level of price and volume volatility, and the market price of many resource companies, particularly those considered speculative exploration companies, have experienced wide fluctuations in price which have not necessarily been related to operating performance or underlying asset values on prospects of such companies. Exploration for gold and other minerals is considered high risk and highly speculative in the resource industry and the trading market for precious and base metal exploration companies is characteristically volatile, with wide fluctuations of price and volume only in part related to progress of exploration. There can be no assurance that continual fluctuations in the Company's share price and volume will not occur.

The Company's common stock is issued in registered form and the following information is from the Company's registrar and transfer agent, Computershare Investor Services Inc. located in Vancouver, British Columbia and Toronto, Ontario, Canada.

On February 28, 2018, the shareholders' list for the Company's common shares showed 239 registered shareholders and 89,598,481 shares outstanding. 190 of these registered shareholders are U.S. residents, owning 19,674,581 shares representing 22% of the issued and outstanding shares of common stock. 36 of these registered shareholders are Canadian residents, owning 69,029,771 shares representing 77% of the issued and outstanding shares of common stock. 13 of these registered shareholders are of other countries, owning 1,026,978 shares representing 1% of the issued and outstanding shares of common stock.

Table No. 18 lists changes, if any, in issued shares to March 28, 2018:

**Table No. 18**

**Shares Issued to March 28, 2018**

	<b>Number</b>
Balance, December 31, 2017	102,199,625
Balance, March 28, 2018	102,199,625

**Item 10. Additional Information**

***Flow-Through Shares***

The Company's common shares are not normally flow-through shares but the Company has issued flow-through shares pursuant to private placements of the Company's common shares. There were no flow-through shares issued in Fiscal 2017, Fiscal 2016 and Fiscal 2015. In Fiscal 2011, the Company issued 100,000 flow-through shares. Flow-through shares differ from other common shares in one aspect only, namely the tax benefits connected with the expenditures associated with the funds raised through the sale of flow through shares flow through to the shareholder rather than the Company; all other rights of the shareholder remain unchanged. Companies must specifically identify the expenditures associated with the funds raised through the sale of flow-through shares. Companies raising capital through flow-through shares must expend the funds on qualifying natural resources exploration in Canada. These tax benefits are available only to shareholders residing in Canada. Shareholders residing in the U.S. and other non-Canadian shareholders, receive no tax benefits through the purchase of flow-through shares.

***Memorandum and Articles***

At the Annual and Special General meeting of the Company held on May 18, 2005, shareholders passed appropriate resolutions to complete the transition procedures in accordance with the *Business Corporations Act* (British Columbia), (the “BCBCA”), to increase the number of common shares which the Company is authorized to issue to an unlimited number of common shares and to cancel the Company’s Articles and adopt new Articles to take advantage of provisions of the BCBCA. The BCBCA was adopted in British Columbia on March 29, 2004 replacing the *Company Act* (the “Former Act”). The BCBCA requires the provisions formerly required in the Memorandum to be in the Articles. The BCBCA eliminates the requirement for a Memorandum.

The revised Articles are an exhibit to the 2005 20-F Annual Report filed with the Commission on March 30, 2006, and replaced the Memorandum and Articles as filed with the Commission on May 17, 2002.

***Articles***

The Company was formed through the amalgamation of Fairfield Minerals Ltd. and Almaden Resources Corporation effective December 31, 2001 under the *Company Act* of British Columbia (the “Company Act”). On March 29, 2004, British Columbia adopted the *Business Corporations Act* (British Columbia) (the “BCBCA”) to replace the Company Act. Companies registered under the Company Act are required to transition to the BCBCA. At the Annual and Special General meeting of the Company held on May 18, 2005, shareholders passed appropriate resolutions to complete the transition procedures to cancel the Company’s Articles and adopt new Articles, which includes an increase of the number of common shares which the Company is authorized to issue to an unlimited number of common shares. The Company’s new Articles became effective in June 2005 (the “Articles”).

The Articles contain no restrictions on the business the Company may carry on.

Under the Articles, if a director has a disclosable interest in a contract or transaction, such director is liable to account to the Company for any profits that accrue to the director as a result of the contract or transaction unless disclosure is made thereof and the contract or transaction is approved in accordance with the provisions of the BCBCA and a director is not entitled to vote on any director's resolution to approve that contract or transaction unless all of the directors have a disclosable interest in that contract or transaction, in which case all of those directors may vote on such resolution.

A director may hold any office or place of profit with the Company in conjunction with the office of director, and no director shall be disqualified by his office from contracting with the Company. A director or his firm may act in a professional capacity for the Company and he or his firm shall be entitled to remuneration for professional services. A director may become a director or other officer or employee of, or otherwise interested in, any company or firm in which the Company may be interested as a shareholder or otherwise. The director shall not be accountable to the Company for any remuneration or other benefits received by him from such other company or firm unless the Company in general meeting directs otherwise.

Under the Articles the directors must manage or supervise the management of the business and affairs of the Company and have the authority to exercise all such powers which are not required to be exercised by the shareholders, or as governed by the BCBCA. Under the Articles the directors may, by resolution, create and appoint one or more committees consisting of such member or members of their body as they think fit and may delegate to any such committee such powers of the Board as the Board may designate or prescribe.

The Articles provide that the quorum necessary for the transaction of the business of the directors may be fixed by the directors and if not so fixed shall be a majority of the directors. The continuing directors may, notwithstanding any vacancy in their body, but if and so long as their number is reduced below the number fixed pursuant to the Articles as the necessary quorum of directors, act only for the purpose of increasing the number of directors to that number, or of summoning a general meeting of the Company, but for no other purpose.

The Articles provide that the directors may, on behalf of the Company:

- Borrow money in a manner and amount, on any security, from any source and upon any terms and conditions;
- Issue bonds, debentures, and other debt obligations either outright or as security for any liability or obligation of the Company or any other person;
- Guarantee the repayment of money by any other person or the performance of any obligation of any other person; and
- Mortgage, charge, or give other security, on the whole or any part of the property or assets of the Company, both present and future.

There are no age limit requirements pertaining to the retirement or non-retirement of directors.

A director need not be a shareholder of the Company.

The Articles provide for the mandatory indemnification of Directors, Officers, former officers and directors, alternate directors, as well as their respective heirs and personal or other legal representatives, or any other person, to the greatest extent permitted by the BCBCA. The indemnification includes the mandatory payment of expenses and, in furtherance thereof, the Company is party to indemnification agreements with such individuals. The directors may cause the Company to purchase and maintain insurance for the benefit of eligible parties.

The rights, preferences and restrictions attaching to each class of the Company's shares are as follows:

### *Common Shares*

The authorized share structure of the Company consists of an unlimited number of common shares without par value. All the shares of common stock of the Company are of the same class and, once issued, rank equally as to dividends, voting powers, and participation in assets. Holders of common stock are entitled to one vote for each share held of record on all matters to be acted upon by the shareholders. Holders of common stock are entitled to receive such dividends as may be declared from time to time by the Board of Directors, in its discretion, out of funds legally available therefore.

Upon liquidation, dissolution or winding up of the Company, holders of common stock are entitled to receive pro rata the assets of the Company, if any, remaining after payments of all debts and liabilities. No shares have been issued subject to call or assessment. There are no pre-emptive or conversion rights and no provisions for redemption or purchase for cancellation, surrender, or sinking or purchase funds.

The Directors may by resolution make any changes in the authorized share structure as may be permitted under Section 54 of the BCBCA, and may by resolution of the Directors make or authorize the making of any alterations to the Articles and the Notice of Articles as may be required by such changes.

The Company may by ordinary resolution, create or vary special rights and restrictions as provided in Section 58 of the BCBCA. No alteration will be valid as to any part of the issued shares of any class unless the holders of all the issued shares of that class consent to the alteration in writing or consent by special separate resolution.

An annual general meeting shall be held once every calendar year at such time (not being more than 15 months after holding the last preceding annual meeting) and place as may be determined by the Directors. The Directors may, as they see fit, convene an extraordinary general meeting. An extraordinary general meeting, if requisitioned in accordance with the BCBCA, shall be convened by the Directors or, if not convened by the Directors, may be convened by the requisitionists as provided in the BCBCA.

There are no limitations upon the rights to own securities.

There are no provisions in the Articles that would have the effect of delaying, deferring, or preventing a change in control of the Company.

There is no special ownership threshold above which an ownership position must be disclosed. However, any ownership level above 10% must be disclosed by news release and notices filed in accordance with Canadian



Securities Laws and by notices to the Toronto Stock Exchange.

A copy of the Company's new articles is an exhibit to the 2005 Form 20-F Annual Report filed with the Commission on March 30, 2006.

### ***Shareholder Rights Plan***

On April 13, 2011, the Company's Board of Directors adopted a Shareholder Rights Plan Agreement (the "Rights Plan") between the Company and Computershare Investor Services Inc. ("Computershare") as Rights Agent. The Rights Plan was subsequently approved by the shareholders of the Company at the Annual General and Special Meeting held June 28, 2011, reconfirmed by the shareholders of the Company at the 2014 Annual General Meeting and amended and reconfirmed at the 2017 Annual General Meeting. The primary objective of the Rights Plan is to ensure, to the extent possible, that all shareholders of the Company are treated fairly in connection with any take-over bid for the Company by (a) providing shareholders with adequate time to properly assess a take-over bid without undue pressure and (b) providing the Board with more time to fully consider an unsolicited take-over bid, and, if applicable, to explore other alternatives to maximize shareholder value.

The full text of the Rights Plan was filed under cover of Form 6-K with the Commission on April 15, 2011 and is also available on SEDAR and the Company's website.

### ***Advance Notice Policy***

On January 28, 2013 the Company's Board of Directors approved and adopted an Advance Notice Policy, as amended on May 1, 2015 (the "Policy") which, among other things, includes a provision that requires advance notice to the Company in circumstances where nominations of persons for election to the Board of Directors are made by shareholders of the Company other than pursuant to: (i) a requisition of a meeting made pursuant to the provisions of the *Business Corporations Act* (British Columbia) (the "BCBCA"); or (ii) a shareholder proposal made pursuant to the provisions of the BCBCA.

The Policy, among other things, fixes a deadline by which holders of record of common shares of the Company must submit director nominations to the Company prior to any annual or special meeting of shareholders and set forth the information that a shareholder must include in the notice to the Company for the notice to be in proper written form.

In the case of an annual meeting of shareholders, notice to the Company must be made not less than 30 nor more than 65 days prior to the date of the annual meeting; provided, however, that in the event the annual meeting is to be held on a date that is less than 50 days after the date on which the first public announcement of the date of the annual meeting was made, notice may be made not later than the close of business on the 10<sup>th</sup> day following such public announcement.

In the case of a special meeting of shareholders (which is not also an annual meeting), notice to the Company must be made not later than the close of business on the 15<sup>th</sup> day following the day on which the first public announcement of the date of the special meeting was made.

The full text of the Advance Notice Policy is an exhibit to the 2012 20-F Annual Report filed with the Commission on March 28, 2013.

#### ***Multiple Voting Policy for Uncontested Elections of Directors***

The Board believes that each of its members should carry the confidence and support of the Company's shareholders and, accordingly, has adopted, effective May 15, 2017, an Amended Majority Voting Policy for the election of directors for non-contested meetings. The Amended Majority Voting Policy provides that, in a non-contested election of directors, voting will be by ballot and, if the number of shares "withheld" for any nominee exceeds the number of shares voted "for" the nominee, then, notwithstanding that such director is duly elected as a matter of corporate law, he or she shall, immediately following the date of the final scrutineer's report on the ballot, tender his or her written resignation to the Chairman of the Board. A "non-contested election" means an election where the number of nominees for director is not greater than the number of directors to be elected. Under the Amended Majority Voting Policy, the Board will consider such offer of resignation and shall make a determination whether or not to accept or reject the resignation no later than 90 days following the date of the applicable shareholders' meeting and shall accept the resignation absent exceptional circumstances. The Board will promptly announce its decision via press release. If the Board determines not to accept the resignation, the press release must fully state the reasons for its decision. No director who is required to tender his or her resignation shall participate in any meeting of the Board at which the resignation is considered. If a resignation is accepted by the Board, and subject to any corporate law restrictions, the Board may leave any resulting vacancy unfilled until the Company's next annual general meeting, or may appoint a new director to fill the vacancy who the Board considers to merit the confidence of the shareholders, or may call a special meeting of shareholders at which there will be presented a management nominee or nominees to fill the vacant position or positions.

The full text of the Amended Multiple Voting Policy is an exhibit to this 20-F Annual Report filed with the Commission.

***Material Contracts***

The following is a summary of each material contract, other than contracts entered into in the ordinary course of business, to which we or any member of the group is a party, for the two years preceding the date of this document.

1. Advance Notice Policy dated January 28, 2013, as amended May 1, 2015 whereby the Policy, among other things, includes a provision that requires advance notice to the Company in circumstances where nominations of persons for election to the Board of Directors are made by shareholders of the Company. The full text of the Policy is filed as an exhibit to the 2012 20-F Annual Report with the Commission on March 28, 2013.

2. Executive Compensation Contract dated effective as of January 29, 2013 between the Company and Hawk Mountain Resources Ltd. (“Hawk”) whereby Hawk agrees to provide the services of Duane Poliquin as Executive Chairman for a term of 2 years renewable for two additional successive terms of 24 months for remuneration of \$240,000 per annum. The agreement was terminated by mutual agreement on December 31, 2015. The full text of the Executive Compensation Contract is filed as an exhibit to the 2012 20-F Annual Report with the Commission on March 28, 2013.
  
3. Executive Compensation Contract dated effective as of January 29, 2013 as amended by Amending Agreement dated April 1, 2016 between the Company and Morgan Poliquin (“Poliquin”) whereby Poliquin agrees to provide the services of President and Chief Executive Officer for a term of 2 years renewable for two additional successive terms of 24 months for remuneration of \$265,000 per annum. The full text of the Executive Compensation Contract is filed as an exhibit to the 2012 20-F Annual Report with the Commission on March 28, 2013 and of the Amending Agreement filed as an exhibit to the 2016 20-F Annual Report with the Commission on March 30, 2017.
  
4. Assignment of Rights Agreement dated March 11, 2013 between the Company’s wholly-owned subsidiary, Compania Minera Zapata, S.A. de C.V., and Don David Gold Mexico, S.A. de C.V. (“Don David”) whereby Don David purchased the Company’s 100% interest in the San Pedro and Fuego prospects by paying US\$100,000 plus Added Value Tax plus US\$16,555 being Don David’s pro-rata share of the mineral taxes paid on January 31, 2013 together with a 2% NSR. The full text of the Assignment of Rights Agreement is filed as an exhibit to the 2013 20-F Annual Report with the Commission on March 25, 2014.
  
5. Sale and Purchase Agreement dated June 20, 2013 between the Company and its wholly-owned subsidiaries, Minera Gavilan, S.A. de C.V. and Almaden America Inc., and Tarsis Resources Ltd. (“Tarsis”) whereby Tarsis purchased the Company’s 100% interests in the Yago, Mezquites, Cofradia, Llano Grande, BP and Black Jack Springs prospects issuing 4,000,000 shares of Tarsis to the Company together with a 2% NSR. The full text of the Sale and Purchase Agreement was furnished to the Commission under cover of Form 6-K on June 20, 2013.
  
6. Amendment Agreement dated November 26, 2013 between the Company’s wholly-owned subsidiary, Minera Gavilan, S.A. de C.V., Candymin, S.A. de C.V. (“Candymin”) and Mr. Charlie Edward Warren (“Warren”) whereby the Company and Candymin obtained a reduction in a royalty with respect to the Caballo Blanco prospect for total payment to Warren of US\$750,000 (the Company US\$350,000/Candymin US\$400,000) and the Company issuing Warren 20,000 shares of the Company. The full text of the Amendment of Rights Agreement is filed as an exhibit to the 2013 20-F Annual Report with the Commission on March 25, 2014.
  
7. Arrangement Agreement dated May 11, 2015 to spinout, pursuant to a statutory Plan of Arrangement, Almaden’s early stage exploration projects, royalty interests and other non-core assets into a new public Company called Almadex. On July 31, 2015, all conditions to the statutory Plan of Arrangement regarding the spinout were satisfied or waived and the spinout was effective. Almaden’s shareholders approved the Plan of Arrangement and exchanged their existing common shares of Almaden for one “new” Almaden common share and 0.6 common share of Almadex. The

full text of the Arrangement Agreement is filed as an exhibit to the 2015 20-F Annual Report with the Commission on March 31, 2016.

8. Administrative Services Agreement between the Company and Almadex Minerals Limited (“Almadex”) dated May 15, 2015, as amended by First Amending Agreement dated December 16, 2015 (the “Agreement”). Under the Agreement, the Company provides management services to Almadex as the sole and exclusive manager, including the authority to manage the assets, operations, business, and administrative affairs of Almadex. Almadex compensates the Company 30% of the Company’s actual monthly cost of rent for any shared facilities, and 30% of any shared personnel’s fees and/or wages. Almadex also pays the Company any reasonable fees or costs incurred on behalf of Almadex by the Company which were approved by Almadex. The Agreement has an initial 5-year term, with subsequent automatic 1 year renewals unless terminated pursuant to the terms permitted under the Agreement and include a Change of Control clause. If either party is subject to Change of Control during the term of the Agreement, the Agreement shall automatically terminate within 48 hours of the Change of Control unless agreed to in writing by both parties. The target of the Change of Control shall then pay the other party \$2 million as compensation for the unplanned termination of the Company’s engagement. “Change of Control” means the date upon which, without the written concurrence of the target of the Change of Control, any person (as that term is defined in the *Securities Act* (British Columbia)) makes and does not withdraw a take-over bid (as that term is defined in the *Securities Act* (British Columbia)) or acquires, directly or indirectly, that number of common shares of the target which equals or exceeds twenty percent (20%) of the then issued common shares of the target. The full text of the Administrative Services Agreement is filed as an exhibit to the 2015 20-F Annual Report with the Commission on March 31, 2016.

9. Termination Agreement dated effective December 31, 2015 between the Company and Hawk Mountain Resources Ltd. for the services of Duane Poliquin as Executive Chairman. The full text of the Termination Agreement is filed as an exhibit to the 2015 20-F Annual Report with the Commission on March 31, 2016.

10. Executive Employment Contract dated effective as of January 1, 2016 between the Company and Duane Poliquin to serve as Executive Chairman for a term of 2 years, renewable for two additional successive terms of 24 months, for remuneration of \$240,000 per annum. The full text of the Executive Compensation Contract is filed as an exhibit to the 2015 20-F Annual Report with the Commission on March 31, 2016 and of the Amending Agreement filed as an exhibit to the 2016 20-F Annual Report with the Commission on March 30, 2017.

### ***Exchange controls***

Except as discussed above, the Company is not aware of any Canadian federal or provincial laws, decrees or regulations that restrict the export or import of capital, including foreign exchange controls, or that affect the remittance of interest, dividends or other payments to non-Canadian holders of the Company's common shares. There are no limitations under the laws of Canada or in the organizing documents of the Company on the right of non-Canadians to hold or vote securities of the Company, except that the Investment Canada Act may require that a "non-Canadian" not acquire "control" of the Company without prior review and approval by the Minister of Innovation, Science and Economic Development. The acquisition of one third or more of the voting shares of the Company would give rise a rebuttable presumption of the acquisition of control, and the acquisition of more than fifty percent of the voting shares of the Company would be deemed to be an acquisition of control. In addition, the Investment Canada Act provides the Canadian government with broad discretionary powers in relation to national security to review and potentially prohibit, condition or require the divestiture of, any investment in the Company by a non-Canadian, including non-control level investments. "Non-Canadian" generally means an individual who is neither a Canadian citizen nor a permanent resident of Canada within the meaning of the Immigration and Refugee Protection Act (Canada) who has been ordinarily resident in Canada for not more than one year after the time at which he or she first became eligible to apply for Canadian citizenship, or a corporation, partnership, trust or joint venture that is ultimately controlled by non-Canadians.

### ***Taxation***

The following summary of the material Canadian federal income tax consequences generally applicable in respect of the common stock reflects the Company's opinion. The tax consequences to any particular holder of common stock will vary according to the status of that holder as an individual, trust, company or member of a partnership, the jurisdiction in which that holder is subject to taxation, the place where that holder is resident and, generally, according to that holder's particular circumstances. This summary is applicable only to holders who are resident in the U.S., have never been resident in Canada, deal at arm's length with the Company, hold their common stock as capital property and who will not use or hold the common stock in carrying on business in Canada. Special rules, which are not discussed in this summary, may apply to a U.S. holder that is an issuer that carries on business in Canada and elsewhere.

This summary is based upon the provisions of the Income Tax Act of Canada and the regulations thereunder (collectively, the "Canadian Tax Act" or "ITA") and the Canada-United States Tax Convention (the "Convention") as at the date of the Registration Statement and the current administrative practices of Canada Revenue Agency. This summary does not take into account Provincial income tax consequences.

Each holder should consult his own tax advisor with respect to the income tax consequences applicable to him in his own particular circumstances.

### **Certain Canadian Federal Income Tax Consequences**

The discussion under this heading summarizes the principal Canadian federal income tax consequences of acquiring, holding and disposing of shares of common stock of the Company for a shareholder of the Company who is not a resident of Canada but is a resident of the U.S. and who will acquire and hold shares of common stock of the Company as capital property for the purposes of the Canadian Tax Act. This summary does not apply to a shareholder who carries on business in Canada through a “permanent establishment” situated in Canada or performs independent personal services in Canada through a fixed base in Canada if the shareholder’s holding in the Company is effectively connected with such permanent establishment or fixed base. This summary is based on the provisions of the Canadian Tax Act and the regulations thereunder and on an understanding of the administrative practices of Canada Revenue Agency, and takes into account all specific proposals to amend the Canadian Tax Act or regulations made by the Minister of Finance of Canada as of the date hereof. It has been assumed that there will be no other relevant amendment of any governing law although no assurance can be given in this respect. This discussion is general only and is not a substitute for independent advice from a shareholder’s own Canadian and U.S. tax advisors.

The provisions of the Canadian Tax Act are subject to income tax treaties to which Canada is a party, including the Convention.

### **Dividends on Common Shares and Other Income**

Under the Canadian Tax Act, a non-resident of Canada is generally subject to Canadian withholding tax at the rate of 25 percent on dividends paid or deemed to have been paid to him or her by a company resident in Canada. The Company is responsible for withholding of tax at the source. The Convention limits the rate to 15 percent if the shareholder is a resident of the U.S. and the dividends are beneficially owned by and paid to such shareholder, and to 5 percent if the shareholder is also a company that beneficially owns at least 10 percent of the voting stock of the payor company.

The amount of a stock dividend (for tax purposes) would generally be equal to the amount by which the paid up or stated capital of the Company had increased by reason of the payment of such dividend. The Company will furnish additional tax information to shareholders in the event of such a dividend. Interest paid or deemed to be paid on the Company’s debt securities held by non-Canadian residents may also be subject to Canadian withholding tax, depending upon the terms and provisions of such securities and any applicable tax treaty. The Convention generally eliminates Canadian tax on interest paid or deemed to be paid by the Company to U.S. residents. The Convention generally exempts from Canadian income tax dividends paid to a religious, scientific, literary, educational or charitable organization or to an organization constituted and operated exclusively to administer a pension, retirement or employee benefit fund or plan, if the organization is a resident of the U.S. and is exempt from income tax under the laws of the U.S.

### **Dispositions of Common Shares**



Under the Canadian Tax Act, a taxpayer's capital gain or capital loss from a disposition of a share of common stock of the Company is the amount, if any, by which his or her proceeds of disposition exceed (or are exceeded by, respectively) the aggregate of his or her adjusted cost base of the share and reasonable expenses of disposition. The capital gain or loss must be computed in Canadian currency using a weighted average adjusted cost base for identical properties. There are special transitional rules to apply capital losses against capital gains that arose in different periods. The amount by which a shareholder's capital loss exceeds the capital gain in a year may be deducted from a capital gain realized by the shareholder in the three previous years or any subsequent year, subject to certain restrictions in the case of a corporate shareholder.

Under the Canadian Tax Act, a non-resident of Canada is subject to Canadian tax on taxable capital gains, and may deduct allowable capital losses, realized on a disposition of "taxable Canadian property." Shares of common stock of the Company will constitute taxable Canadian property of a shareholder at a particular time if the shareholder used the shares in carrying on business in Canada, or if at any time in the five years immediately preceding the disposition 25% or more of the issued shares of any class or series in the capital stock of the Company belonged to one or more persons in a group comprising the shareholder and persons with whom the shareholder and persons with whom the shareholder did not deal at arm's length and in certain other circumstances.

The Convention relieves U.S. residents from liability for Canadian tax on capital gains derived on a disposition of shares unless

(a) the value of the shares is derived principally from "real property" in Canada, including the right to explore for or exploit natural resources and rights to amounts computed by reference to production,

(b) the shareholder was resident in Canada for 120 months during any period of 20 consecutive years preceding, and at any time during the 10 years immediately preceding, the disposition and the shares were owned by him when he or she ceased to be resident in Canada, or

(c) the shares formed part of the business property of a “permanent establishment” that the holder has or had in Canada within the 12 months preceding the disposition.

### **Certain U.S. Federal Income Tax Consequences**

The following is a discussion of material U.S. federal income tax consequences generally applicable to a U.S. Holder (as defined below) of shares of the Company. This discussion does not cover any state, local or foreign tax consequences.

The following discussion is based upon the sections of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (“the Code”), Treasury Regulations, published Internal Revenue Service (“IRS”) rulings, published administrative positions of the IRS and court decisions that are currently applicable, any or all of which could be materially and adversely changed, possibly on a retroactive basis, at any time. In addition, the discussion does not consider the potential effects, both adverse and beneficial, or recently proposed legislation which, if enacted, could be applied, possibly on a retroactive basis, at any time. The following discussion is for general information only. It is not intended to be, nor should it be construed to be, legal or tax advice to any U.S. Holder or prospective holder and not an opinion or representation with respect to the U.S. Federal income tax consequences to any U.S. Holder or prospective holder is made. The following summary was not written and is not intended to be used, and cannot be used, by any person for the avoidance of any penalties with respect to taxes that may be imposed on such person. U.S. Holders and prospective holders of shares of the Company are urged to consult their own tax advisors about the federal, state, local, and foreign tax consequences of purchasing, owning and disposing of common shares of the Company.

### **U.S. Holders**

As used herein, a U.S. Holder includes a holder of shares of the Company who is a citizen or resident of the U.S. (as defined under Treasury Regulation Section 301.7701(b) or any applicable income tax convention), a company (or an entity which has elected to be treated as a corporation under Treasury Regulation Sections 301.7701-3) created or organized in or under the laws of the U.S. or of any political subdivision thereof, any estate other than a foreign estate (as defined in Section 7701(a)(31)(A) of the Code or, a trust subject to the primary supervision of a court within the U.S. and control of a U.S. fiduciary as described in Section 7701(a)(30)(E) of the Code). This summary does not address the tax consequences to, and U.S. Holder does not include, persons subject to special provisions of Federal income tax law, such as tax-exempt organizations, qualified retirement plans, financial institutions, insurance companies, real estate investment trusts, regulated investment companies, broker-dealers, non-resident alien individuals, persons or entities that have a “functional currency” other than the U.S. dollar, shareholders who hold common shares as part of a straddle, hedging or conversion transaction, and shareholders who acquired their shares through the exercise of employee stock options or otherwise as compensation for services. This summary is limited to U.S. Holders who own shares as capital assets. This summary does not address the consequences to a person or entity

holding an interest in a shareholder of the Company or the consequences to a person of the ownership, exercise or disposition of any options, warrants or other rights to acquire shares of the Company.

### **Distribution on Shares of the Company**

U.S. Holders receiving dividend distributions (including constructive dividends) with respect to shares of the Company are required to include in gross income for U.S. federal income tax purposes the gross amount of such distributions equal to the U.S. dollar value of such distributions on the date of receipt (based on the exchange rate on such date), to the extent that the Company has current or accumulated earnings and profits, without reduction for any Canadian income tax withheld from such distributions. Such Canadian tax withheld may be credited, subject to certain limitations, against the U.S. Holder's U.S. federal income tax liability or, alternatively, may be deducted in computing the U.S. Holder's U.S. federal taxable income. (See more detailed discussion at "Foreign Tax Credit" below). To the extent that distributions exceed current or accumulated earnings and profits of the Company, they will be treated first as a return of capital up to the U.S. Holder's adjusted basis in the common shares and thereafter as gain from the sale or exchange of the common shares. Unless the distribution constitutes "qualified dividend income" as defined in Section 1(h)(11), dividend income will be taxed at marginal tax rates applicable to ordinary income.

In the case of foreign currency received as a dividend that is not converted by the recipient into U.S. dollars on the date of receipt, a U.S. Holder will have a tax basis in the foreign currency equal to its U.S. dollar value on the date of receipt. Gain or loss may be recognized upon a subsequent sale or other disposition of the foreign currency, including an exchange for U.S. dollars.

Dividends paid on the shares of the Company will not generally be eligible for the dividends received deduction provided to companies receiving dividends from certain U.S. corporations. A U.S. Holder which is a corporation may, under certain circumstances, be entitled to a 70% deduction of the U.S. source portion of dividends received from the Company (unless the Company qualifies as a “passive foreign investment company”, as defined below) if such U.S. Holder owns shares representing at least 10% of the voting power and value of the Company. The availability of this deduction is subject to several complex limitations which are beyond the scope of this discussion. In addition, as discussed under the Controlled Foreign Corporation section below, distributions from controlled foreign corporations to certain U.S. corporate shareholders may be entitled to a dividend received deduction for the foreign source portion of the dividend.

The so-called Tax Cuts and Jobs Act (the “Tax Act”) was enacted on December 22, 2017 by the U.S. government. The Tax Act broadly changes the taxation of foreign earnings attributable to certain U.S. Holders from a worldwide tax regime to a territorial regime. The Tax Act created a transition tax that creates a deemed repatriation of previously untaxed foreign earnings and profits. Certain U.S. Holders may be subject to this transition tax and recognize taxable income due to undistributed earnings and profits of the Company.

### **Foreign Tax Credit**

A U.S. Holder who pays (or has withheld from distributions) Canadian income tax with respect to the ownership of shares of the Company may be entitled, at the option of the U.S. Holder, to either a deduction or a tax credit for such foreign tax paid or withheld. This election is made on a year-by-year basis and applies to all foreign income taxes (or taxes in lieu of income tax) paid by (or withheld from) the U.S. Holder during the year. There are significant and complex limitations which apply to a U.S. Holder’s ability to claim the foreign tax credit. Furthermore, a foreign tax credit may not be claimed when a U.S. Holder is entitled to a dividend received deduction. The availability of the foreign tax credit and the application of the limitations on the credit are fact specific and holders and prospective holders of shares of the Company should consult their own tax advisors regarding their individual circumstances.

### **Disposition of Shares of the Company**

For U.S. tax purposes, a U.S. Holder will generally recognize gain or loss upon the sale of shares of the Company equal to the difference, if any, between (i) the amount of cash plus the fair market value of any property received, and (ii) the shareholder’s tax basis in his, her or its shares of the Company. This gain or loss will be capital gain or loss if the common shares are capital assets in the hands of the U.S. Holder. Capital gain will then be classified as a short-term or long-term capital gain or loss depending upon the holding period of the U.S. Holder. Preferential tax rates apply to long-term capital gains of U.S. Holders which are individuals, estates or trusts. Gains and losses are netted and combined according to special rules in arriving at the overall capital gain or loss for a particular tax year.

Deductions for net capital losses are subject to significant limitations. For U.S. Holders which are not companies, any unused portion of such net capital loss may be carried over to be used in later tax years until such net capital loss is thereby exhausted, but individuals may not carry back capital losses. For U.S. Holders which are taxable corporations (other than companies subject to Subchapter S of the Code), an unused net capital loss may be carried back three years from the loss year and carried forward five years from the loss year to be offset against capital gains until such net capital loss is thereby exhausted.

### **Net Investment Tax**

U.S. Holders may also be subject to the Net Investment Income Tax, which is imposed on certain U.S. taxpayers' income from investments, such as dividends, interest and capital gains. Individual taxpayers are liable for a 3.8 percent Net Investment Income Tax on the lesser of their net investment income, or the amount by which their modified adjusted gross income exceeds certain statutory thresholds based on their filing status. U.S. Holders or prospective U.S. Holders should consult their tax advisors to determine if the Net Investment Income Tax will apply in their individual circumstances.

### **Other Considerations**

In the following circumstances, the above sections of the discussion may not describe the U.S. federal income tax consequences resulting from the holding and disposition of shares of the Company.

### **Passive Foreign Investment Company**

As a foreign company with U.S. Holders, the Company could potentially be treated as a passive foreign investment company ("PFIC"), as defined in Section 1297 of the Code. Section 1297 of the Code defines a PFIC as a company that is not formed in the U.S. and, for any taxable year, either (i) 75% or more of its gross income is "passive income", which includes among other types of income, interest, dividends and certain rents and royalties or (ii) the average percentage, by fair market value (or, if the company is a controlled foreign company or makes an election, by adjusted tax basis), of its assets that produce or are held for the production of "passive income" is 50% or more.

The rules governing PFICs can have significant tax effects on U.S. shareholders of foreign companies. U.S. shareholder's income or gain, with respect to a disposition or deemed disposition of PFIC shares or a distribution payable on such shares will generally be subject to tax at the highest marginal rates applicable to ordinary income and certain interest charges as discussed below, unless the U.S. shareholder has timely made a "qualified electing fund" election or a "mark-to-market" election for those shares. The elections available to U.S. shareholders of a PFIC are made on a shareholder-by-shareholder basis, and U.S. shareholders should consult with tax advisors as soon as possible to determine the what election, if any, such U.S. shareholder should make the timing for making such election can have consequences on the U.S. shareholders tax position with respect to its ownership in a PFIC.

Under one method, a U.S. shareholder who elects in a timely manner to treat the PFIC as a Qualified Electing Fund ("QEF"), as defined in the Code, (an "Electing U.S. Holder") will be required to currently include in his income for any taxable year in which the company qualifies as a PFIC his pro-rata share of the company's (i) "net capital gain" (the excess of net long-term capital gain over net short-term capital loss), which will be taxed as long-term capital gain to the Electing U.S. Holder, and (ii) "ordinary earnings" (the excess of earnings and profits over net capital gain), which will be taxed as ordinary income to the Electing U.S. Holder, in each case, for the U.S. Holder's taxable year in which (or with which) the Company's taxable year ends, regardless of whether such amounts are actually distributed. A QEF election also allows the Electing U.S. Holder to (i) generally treat any gain realized on the disposition of his common shares (or deemed to be realized on the pledge of his common shares) as capital gain; (ii) treat his share of the company's net capital gain, if any, as long-term capital gain instead of ordinary income, and (iii) either avoid interest charges resulting from PFIC status altogether (see discussion of interest charge below), or make an annual election, subject to certain limitations, to defer payment of current taxes on his share of the company's annual realized net capital gain and ordinary earnings which will then be subject, however, to an interest charge.

The procedure a U.S. Holder must comply with in making a timely QEF election will depend on whether the year of the election is the first year in the U.S. Holder's holding period in which the Company is a PFIC. If the U.S. shareholder makes a QEF election in such first year, (sometimes referred to as a "Pedigreed QEF Election"), then the U.S. shareholder may make the QEF election by simply filing the appropriate documents at the time the U.S. Holder files its tax return for such first year. If, however, the company qualified as a PFIC in a prior year during the U.S. shareholder's holding period, then the U.S. shareholder may make a retroactive QEF election, provided he has preserved his right to do so under the protective statement regime or he obtains IRS permission.

If a U.S. shareholder has not made a QEF Election at any time (a "Non-electing U.S. Holder"), then special taxation rules under Section 1291 of the Code will apply to (i) gains realized on the disposition (or deemed to be realized by reason of a pledge) of his common shares and (ii) certain "excess distributions" by the company. An excess distribution is a current year distribution received by the U.S. shareholder on PFIC stock to the extent that the distribution exceeds its ratable portion of 125% of the average amount received by the U.S. shareholder during the preceding three years.

A Non-electing U.S. shareholder generally would be required to pro-rate all gains realized on the disposition of his common shares and all excess distributions over the entire holding period for the common shares. All gains or excess distributions allocated to prior years of the U.S. shareholder (other than years prior to the first taxable year of the Company during such U.S. Holder's holding period and beginning after January 1, 1987 for which it was a PFIC) would be taxed at the highest marginal tax rate for each such prior year applicable to ordinary income. The Non-electing U.S. shareholder also would be liable for interest on the foregoing tax liability for each such prior year calculated as if such liability had been due with respect to each such prior year. A Non-electing non-corporate U.S. shareholder must treat this interest charge as "personal interest" which is wholly non-deductible. The balance of the gain or the excess distribution will be treated as ordinary income in the year of the disposition or distribution, and no interest charge will be incurred with respect to such balance.

If a company is a PFIC for any taxable year during which a Non-electing U.S. shareholder holds shares, then the company will continue to be treated as a PFIC with respect to such shares, even if it is no longer by definition a PFIC. A Non-electing U.S. shareholder may terminate this deemed PFIC status by electing to recognize gain (which will be taxed under the rules discussed above for Non-Electing U.S. Holders) as if such shares had been sold on the last day of the last taxable year for which it was a PFIC. If the company no longer qualifies as a PFIC in a subsequent year, then normal Code rules and not the PFIC rules will apply with respect to a U.S. shareholder who has made a Pedigreed QEF election.

If a U.S. shareholder makes a QEF Election that is not a Pedigreed Election (i.e., it is made after the first year during which the company is a PFIC and the U.S. shareholder holds shares of the company) (a "Non-Pedigreed Election"), the QEF rules apply prospectively but do not apply to years prior to the year in which the QEF first becomes effective. U.S. Holders are encouraged to consult their tax advisors regarding the specific consequences of making or not making a QEF Election.

Under an alternative method, U.S. Holders who hold (actually or constructively) marketable stock of a PFIC may elect to mark such stock to the market annually (a "mark-to-market election"). If such an election is made, such U.S. Holder will generally not be subject to the special taxation rules of Section 1291 discussed above. However, if the mark-to-market election is made by a Non-Electing U.S. Holder after the beginning of the holding period for the PFIC stock, then the Section 1291 rules will apply to certain dispositions of, distributions on and other amounts taxable with respect to the Company shares. A U.S. Holder who makes the mark-to-market election will include in income for each taxable year for which the election is in effect an amount equal to the excess, if any, of the fair market value of the shares of the Company as of the close of such tax year over such U.S. Holder's adjusted basis in such common shares. In addition, the U.S. Holder is allowed a deduction for the lesser of (i) the excess, if any, of such U.S. Holder's adjusted tax basis in the shares over the fair market value of such shares as of the close of the tax year, or (ii) the excess, if any, of (a) the mark-to-market gains for the shares in the Company included by such U.S. Holder for prior tax years, including any amount which would have been treated as a mark-to-market gain for any prior tax year but for the Section 1291 rules discussed above with respect to Non-Electing U.S. Holders, over (b) the mark-to-market losses for shares that were allowed as deductions for prior tax years. A U.S. Holder's adjusted tax basis in the shares of the Company will be adjusted to reflect the amount included in or deducted from income as a result of a mark-to-market election. A mark-to-market election applies to the taxable year in which the election is made and to each subsequent taxable year, unless the Company's shares cease to be marketable, as specifically defined, or the IRS consents to revocation of the election. U.S. Holders should consult their tax advisors regarding the manner of making such an election.

### **Controlled Foreign Corporation**

If more than 50% of the total combined voting power of all classes of stock entitled to vote or more than 50% of the total value of the stock of the Company is owned, directly, indirectly or constructively, by U.S. Holders, each of whom own actually or constructively 10% or more of the total combined voting power of all classes of stock or 10% or more of the total value of all classes of stock of the Company ("10% U.S. Holders"), the Company would be treated as a "controlled foreign corporation" or "CFC" under Subpart F of the Code. This classification would effect many complex results, one of which requires such 10% U.S. Holders to include in their income their pro rata share of (i) Subpart F income of the CFC, (ii) the CFC's earnings from certain investments in U.S. property, (iii) global intangible



low-taxed income (“GILTI), and (iv) base erosion minimum tax amounts for certain 10% U.S. Holders with sufficient gross receipts that make deductible payments to related foreign parties in tax years after December 31, 2018. The foreign tax credit described above may reduce the U.S. tax on these amounts. In addition, under Section 1248 of the Code, gain from the sale or exchange of shares by a U.S. Holder of common shares of the Company which is or was a 10% U.S. Holder at any time during the five-year period ending with the sale or exchange will be treated as dividend income to the extent of earnings and profits of the Company (accumulated only while the shares were held by the 10% U.S. Holder and while the Company was a CFC attributable to the shares sold or exchanged. Certain U.S. corporations that are 10% U.S. Holders may be entitled to a dividend received deduction for the foreign source portion of dividends received from the Company as discussed above.

If a foreign corporation is both a PFIC and a CFC, the foreign corporation generally will not be treated as a PFIC with respect to certain 10% U.S. Holders of the CFC. This rule generally will be effective for taxable years of 10% U.S. Holders beginning after 1997 and for taxable years of foreign company’s ending with or within such taxable years of 10% U.S. Holders. The PFIC provisions continue to apply in the case of a PFIC that is also a CFC with respect to the U.S. Holders that are less than 10% shareholders. Because of the complexity of Subpart F, a more detailed review of these rules is beyond the scope of this discussion.

### **Information Reporting and Backup Withholding**

In general, unless a U.S. Holder belongs to a category of certain exempt recipients (such as corporations), information reporting requirements will apply to distributions as well as proceeds of sales from the sale of shares of the Company that are effected through the U.S. office of a broker or the non-U.S. office of a broker that has certain connections with the United States. Backup withholding may apply to these payments if a U.S. Holder fails to provide a correct taxpayer identification number or certification of exempt status, fails to report in full dividend and interest income or, in certain circumstances, fails to comply with applicable certification requirements. Any amounts withheld under the backup withholding rules will be allowed as a refund or credit against a U.S. Holder's U.S. federal income tax, provided the U.S. Holder furnishes the required information to the IRS in a timely manner. Other filing requirements may also apply. U.S. Holders should consult with their own tax advisors concerning their particular reporting requirements.

U.S. Holder's should consult with their tax advisors to determine if holding common shares in the Company will create any other disclosure or reporting requirements for U.S. tax purposes.

### ***Documents on Display***

Any of the documents referred to above can be viewed at the registered office of the Company located at 1177 West Hastings Street, Suite 1710, Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada, V6E 2L3.

This Annual Report and the Company's recent 6-K filings can be viewed on the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission's EDGAR web-site at [www.sec.gov/edgar/searchedgar/companysearch.html](http://www.sec.gov/edgar/searchedgar/companysearch.html).

### **Item 11. Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures about Market Risk**

The Company's primary mineral exploration properties are located in Mexico. As a Canadian company, Almaden's cash balances are kept primarily in Canadian funds, while many exploration and property expenses are denominated in U.S. dollars or the Mexican peso. Therefore, the Company is exposed to some exchange rate risk. The Company considers the amount of risk to be manageable and does not currently, nor is likely in the foreseeable future to, conduct hedging to reduce its exchange rate risk. A 10% change in the U.S. dollar exchange rate relative to the Canadian dollar would change the Company's net loss by \$165,000. A 10% change in the Mexican peso exchange rate relative to the Canadian dollar would change the Company's net loss by \$6,400.

### **Item 12. Description of Securities Other than Equity Securities**

Not Applicable

## **PART II**

### **Item 13. Defaults, Dividend Arrearages and Delinquencies**

Not Applicable

### **Item 14. Material Modifications to the Rights of Securities Holders and Use of Proceeds**

Not Applicable

### **Item 15. Controls and Procedures**

Disclosure Controls and Procedures

The Company conducted an evaluation of the effectiveness of the design and operation of our disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Rules 13a-15(e) under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or “Exchange Act”) as of December 31, 2017. This evaluation was conducted under the supervision and with the participation of management, including the Company’s Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer. Based upon this evaluation, the Company’s Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer have concluded that, as of December 31, 2017, the Company’s disclosure controls and procedures were effective to provide reasonable assurance that information required to be disclosed by the Company in reports filed or submitted under the Exchange Act is recorded, processed, summarized and reported within the time periods specified by the rules and forms. The Company also concluded that our disclosure controls and procedures are effective to provide reasonable assurance that information required to be disclosed in the reports filed or submitted under the Exchange Act is accumulated and communicated to our management, including the Company’s Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer, to allow timely decisions regarding required disclosure.

## Management's Annual Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting

The Company's management is responsible for establishing and maintaining adequate internal control over financial reporting for the Company. Internal control over financial reporting is a process designed by, or under the supervision of, the Company's principal executive and principal financial officers and effected by the Company's board of directors, management and other personnel, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with IFRS as issued by IASB.

Because of the inherent limitations of internal control over financial reporting, including the possibility of collusion or improper management override of controls, material misstatements due to error or fraud may not be prevented or detected on a timely basis. Also, projections of any evaluation of the effectiveness of the internal control over financial reporting to future periods are subject to the risk that the controls may become inadequate because of changes in conditions, or that the degree of compliance with the policies or procedures may deteriorate.

The Company's management assessed the effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2017. In making this assessment, the Company's management used criteria set forth by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission in *Internal Control-Integrated Framework (2013)* published by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO). Based on its assessment, management concluded that, as of December 31, 2017, the Company's internal control over financial reporting was effective.

There were no changes in the Company's internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the year ended December 31, 2017 that has materially affected, or that is reasonably likely to materially affect, the Company's internal control over financial reporting.

### **Item 16A. Audit Committee Financial Expert**

The Company's Board of Directors has determined that Mr. Mark T. Brown is the Company's audit committee financial expert. Mr. Brown has extensive business and financial experience. He has served as a director of a number of other publicly traded companies over the past 20 years, and currently serves as a director of eight other publicly traded mineral exploration companies. Mr. Brown is independent as defined by Section 803(B) of the NYSE MKT Listing Standards.

### **Item 16B. Code of Ethics**

The Company adopted several codes of conduct, including a Code of Business Ethics, a Code of Business Conduct Ethics for Directors, a Communications Policy and an Audit Committee Charter. These initial codes were filed with the 20-F Annual Report for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2003 as filed with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission on May 11, 2004. After review, the Company has adopted revised and new codes as follow: Audit Committee Charter, Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee-Responsibilities and Duties, Compensation Committee-Responsibilities and Duties, Code of Business Ethics, Code of Business Conduct and Ethics for Directors, Communications Policy, Securities Trading Policy, Whistleblowers Policy and a Privacy Policy (the "Codes"). The Codes may be viewed on the Company's website at [www.almadenminerals.com](http://www.almadenminerals.com). The Codes may also be viewed as filed on EDGAR as an exhibit to the 2005 20-F Annual Report filed with the Commission on March 30, 2006. Any amendments to the Codes or waivers of the provision of any Codes will be posted on the Company's website within 5 business days of such amendment or waiver.

The Company has adopted a Code of Business Conduct and Ethics for Directors (“Code”), a Code of Business Ethics (“COBE”), a Securities Trading Policy and a Privacy Policy. Employees and consultants are required as a term of employment or engagement to undertake to abide by the COBE. Directors are bound to observe the Code adopted by the Board.

All Directors, Officers and Employees (“Individuals”) sign a Certification (“Certification”) stating they have read the Code of Business Ethics policy (“Policy”) of the Company and have complied with such Policy in all respects. The Certification further acknowledges that all members of the Individual’s family, all other persons who live with the Individual and all holding companies and other related entities of the Individual and all such persons or companies acting on behalf of or at the request of any of the foregoing also complied with such Policy. The Certification also states that any violation of such Policy may constitute grounds for immediate suspension or dismissal.

Each director is expected and required by statute to act honestly and in good faith with a view to the best interests of the Company and to exercise the care, diligence and skill that a reasonably prudent individual would exercise in comparable circumstances and in accordance with the *Business Corporations Act* (British Columbia) and the Company’s Articles.

#### **Item 16C. Principal Accountant Fees and Services**

##### **Audit Committee’s pre-approval policies and procedures**

The Audit Committee nominates and engages the independent auditors to audit the financial statements, and approves all audit services, audit-related services, tax services and other services provided by Davidson & Company LLP. Any services provided by Davidson & Company LLP that are not specifically included within the scope of the audit must be preapproved by the Audit Committee prior to any engagement. The Audit Committee is permitted to approve certain fees for audit-related services, tax services and other services before the completion of the engagement.

Table No. 19 lists the aggregate fees billed or estimated for each of the last two fiscal years for professional services rendered by the principal accountant for the audit of the Company’s annual financial statements or services that are normally provided by the accountant in connection with statutory and regulatory filings or engagements for those fiscal years.

##### **Table No. 19**

##### **Principal Accountant Fees**

December 31, December 31,

	2017	2016
Audit fees	\$38,000	\$38,000
Audit-related fees	12,898	4,330
Tax fees	-	-
Other fees	-	-

Fiscal 2017 and Fiscal 2016 audit fees relate to the annual audit of the Company's consolidated financial statements, effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting and review of the Form 20-F. Audit-related fees relate to accounting advisory services. Tax fees relate to the completion of income tax returns and tax consulting services. Other fees relate to services other than audit fees, audit-related fees, and tax fees described above.

#### **Item 16D. Exemptions from the Listing Standards for Audit Committees**

Not applicable.

#### **Item 16E. Purchases of Equity Securities by the Issuer and Affiliated Purchasers**

Not applicable.

#### **Item 16F. Change in Registrant's Certifying Accountant**

On January 4, 2016, the Company accepted the resignation of Deloitte LLP, Chartered Professional Accountants, and appointed Davidson & Company LLP, Chartered Professional Accountants, as the Company's successor auditor. Deloitte LLP resigned on its own initiative. The resignation of the former auditor was accepted by the Company's Audit Committee and the Board of Directors. The appointment of the successor auditor was made and approved by the Company's Audit Committee and the Board of Directors. Deloitte LLP identified an independence matter related to their audit for the year ended December 31, 2013. Deloitte LLP discussed the matter with the Chair of the Audit Committee, and have stated they do not believe the independence matter affects the impartiality, objectivity and integrity of the previously issued audit report or underlying financial statements, or any financial statements issued or to be issued subsequent to the date of the most recent financial statements covered by an audit report. The audit committee agrees with Deloitte's determination.

During the two most recent fiscal years, there were no disagreements between the Company and the current or former auditors. The accountant's report on the financial statements for each of the two most recent fiscal years contained no adverse opinions or disclaimer of opinions. The Company did not consult with Davidson & Company LLP during the two fiscal years prior to their engagement regarding the application of accounting principles to any specified transaction or any accounting, auditing or financial reporting issue, or any matter that was subject to a disagreement or reportable event.

The Company has provided Deloitte LLP with a copy of this disclosure and they have provided a letter which agrees with the statements made by the Company. A copy of this letter has been filed as an exhibit to the Company's fiscal 2015 Form 20-F Annual Report filed with the Commission on March 31, 2016.

#### **Item 16G. Corporate Governance**

The Company's class of common shares is listed on the NYSE MKT and the Toronto Stock Exchange. Under the rules of the NYSE MKT, listed companies are generally required to have a majority of their Board of Directors be "independent" as defined by the NYSE MKT Company Guide Rules. Currently, as permitted under applicable Canadian regulations, the Company's Board consists of 8 directors, of which 6 are considered to be "independent." In the opinion of management, the Company's corporate governance practices do not differ in any significant way from those required of U.S. domestic companies listed on the NYSE MKT.

#### **Item 16H. Mine Safety Disclosure**

Not applicable.

### **PART III**

#### **Item 17. Financial Statements**

The Company has provided financial statements pursuant to Item 18 of this Form 20-F.

#### **Item 18. Financial Statements**



The Company's consolidated financial statements and notes thereto are expressed in Canadian Dollars (CDN\$) and are prepared in accordance and compliance with International Financial Reporting Standards ("IFRS") as issued by the International Accounting Standards Board ("IASB").

## **Item 19. Exhibits**

A. The financial statements and notes thereto as required under Item 18 are attached hereto and found immediately following the text of this Annual Report.

### Audited Financial Statements

Independent registered Public Accounting Firm reports on the consolidated financial statements, dated March 28, 2018

Consolidated statements of financial position at December 31, 2017 and 2016

Consolidated statements of comprehensive loss for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015

Consolidated statements of changes in equity for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015

Consolidated statements of cash flows for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015

Summary of significant accounting policies and other explanatory information

B. Index to Exhibits

1. Certificate of Amalgamation  
(P) Amalgamation Agreement  
- Incorporated by reference to the Company's Form 20-F Annual Report for the year ended December 31, 2001, as filed with the Commission on May 17, 2002.
- 1.1 Articles  
- Incorporated by reference to the Company's Form 20-F Annual Report for the year ended December 31, 2005, as filed with the Commission on March 30, 2006.
2. Instruments defining the rights of holders of equity or debt securities being registered  
- Refer to Exhibit No. 1.
3. Voting trust agreements. The Voting Trust Agreement dated December 17, 2009 between Ernesto Echavarria, as grantor, and Messrs Duane and Morgan Poliquin, as voting trustees.  
- Incorporated by reference to the Company's Form 20-F for the year ended December 31, 2013 and filed with the Commission on March 31, 2014.
4. Executive Compensation Contract dated January 29, 2013 with Hawk Mountain Resources Ltd.  
- Incorporated by reference to the Company's Form 20-F for the year ended December 31, 2012 and filed with the Commission on March 28, 2013.
- 4.1 Executive Compensation Contract dated January 29, 2013 with Morgan Poliquin  
- Incorporated by reference to the Company's Form 20-F for the year ended December 31, 2012 and filed with the Commission on March 28, 2013.
- 4.2 Assignment of Rights Agreement dated March 11, 2013 with Don David Gold Mexico, S.A. de C.V.  
- Incorporated by reference to the Company's Form 20-F for the year ended December 31, 2013 and filed with the Commission on March 31, 2014.
- 4.3 Sale and Purchase Agreement dated June 20, 2013 with Tarsis Resources Ltd.  
- Incorporated by reference to the Form 6-K and filed with the Commission on June 20, 2013.
- 4.4 Amendment Agreement dated November 26, 2013 with Candymin, S.A. de C.V. and Mr. Charlie Warren  
- Incorporated by reference to the Company's Form 20-F for the year ended December 31, 2013 and filed with the Commission on March 31, 2014.
- 4.5 Arrangement Agreement dated May 11, 2015 in connection with the Company's statutory Plan of Arrangement with Almadex and filed with the Commission on March 31, 2016.
- 4.6 Administrative Services Agreement between the Company and Almadex Minerals Limited dated May 15, 2015 and filed with the Commission on March 31, 2016.
- 4.7 First Amending Agreement to the May 15, 2015 Administrative Services Agreement between the Company and Almadex Minerals Limited dated December 16, 2015 and filed with the Commission on March 31, 2016.

- 4.8 Termination Agreement effective December 31, 2015 between the Company and Hawk Mountain Resources Ltd. and filed with the Commission on March 31, 2016.
- 4.9 Executive Employment Contract between the Company and Duane Poliquin dated effective January 1, 2016 and filed with the Commission on March 31, 2016.
- 4.10 Deloitte Letter to the Securities and Exchange Commission dated March 29, 2016 and filed with the Commission on March 31, 2016.
- 4.11 Amending Agreement dated April 1, 2016 to the Executive Compensation Contract with Morgan Poliquin dated January 29, 2013 and filed with the Commission on March 30, 2017.
- 4.12 Amending Agreement dated April 1, 2016 to the Executive Employment Contract with Duane Poliquin dated January 1, 2016 and filed with the Commission on March 30, 2017.
5. List of foreign patents – N/A
6. Calculation of earnings per share – N/A
7. Explanation of calculation of ratios – N/A
8. List of subsidiaries

9. Statement pursuant to the instruction to Item 8.A.4, regarding the financial statement filed in registration Statements for initial public offerings of securities – N/A
10. Any notice required by Rule 104 of Regulation BTR – N/A
11. Audit Committee Charter
  - 11.1 Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee-Duties and Responsibility
  - 11.2 Compensation Committee-Responsibilities and Duties
  - 11.3 Code of Business Ethics
  - 11.4 Code of Business Conduct and Ethics for Directors
  - 11.5 Communications Policy
  - 11.6 Securities Trading Policy
  - 11.7 Whistleblower Policy
  - 11.8 Privacy Policy
    - Incorporated by reference to the Company’s Form 20-F Annual Report for the year ended December 31, 2005, as filed with the Commission on March 30, 2006.
  - 11.9 Shareholder Rights Plan dated April 13, 2011, as amended and reconfirmed at the 2017 Annual General Meeting
    - Incorporated by reference to the Form 6-K filed with the Commission on April 15, 2011.
  - 11.10 Amended Advance Notice Policy dated January 28, 2013, as amended May 1, 2015
  - 11.11 Amended Majority Voting Policy – adopted by the Board of Directors on May 7, 2013, as amended effective May 15, 2017
- 12.1 Certification of CEO Pursuant to Securities Exchange Act, Rules 13a-14 and 15d-14 as Adopted Pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002
- 12.2 Certification of CFO Pursuant to Securities Exchange Act, Rules 13a-14 and 15d-14 as Adopted Pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002
- 13.1 Certification of CEO Pursuant to the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, As Adopted Pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002
- 13.2 Certification of CFO Pursuant to the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, As Adopted Pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002

(P): Indicates a paper filing

Consolidated Financial Statements of

**Almaden Minerals Ltd.**

For the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015



**Almaden Minerals Ltd.**

December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015

Table of contents

<u>Independent Auditors' Report</u>	<u>1-2</u>
<u>Consolidated statements of financial position</u>	<u>3</u>
<u>Consolidated statements of comprehensive loss</u>	<u>4</u>
<u>Consolidated statements of cash flows</u>	<u>5</u>
<u>Consolidated statements of changes in equity</u>	<u>6</u>
<u>Notes to the consolidated financial statements</u>	<u>7-40</u>

REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

To the Shareholders and Directors of

Almaden Minerals Ltd.

***Opinion on the Consolidated Financial Statements***

We have audited the accompanying consolidated financial statements of Almaden Minerals Ltd. (the “Entity”), which comprise the consolidated statements of financial position as of December 31, 2017 and 2016, and the related consolidated statements of comprehensive loss, cash flows, and changes in equity for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015 and the related notes, comprising a summary of significant accounting policies and other explanatory information (collectively referred to as the consolidated financial statements).

In our opinion, these consolidated financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the Entity as at December 31, 2017 and 2016 and its financial performance and its cash flows for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015 in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards as issued by the International Accounting Standards Board.

***Basis for Opinion***

***Management’s Responsibility for the Consolidated Financial Statements***

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these consolidated financial statements in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards as issued by the International Accounting Standards Board, and for such internal control as management determines is necessary to enable the preparation of consolidated financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.



***Auditors' Responsibility***

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these consolidated financial statements based on our audits. We conducted our audits in accordance with Canadian generally accepted auditing standards and the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) ("PCAOB"). Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the consolidated financial statements are free from material misstatement, whether due to error or fraud. Those standards also require that we comply with ethical requirements, including independence. We are required to be independent with respect to the Entity in accordance with the ethical requirements that are relevant to our audit of the consolidated financial statements in Canada, the U.S. federal securities laws and the applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission and the PCAOB. We are a public accounting firm registered with the PCAOB.

An audit includes performing procedures to assess the risks of material misstatements of the consolidated financial statements, whether due to error or fraud, and performing procedures to respond to those risks. Such procedures included obtaining and examining, on a test basis, audit evidence regarding the amounts and disclosures in the consolidated financial statements. The procedures selected depend on our judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the consolidated financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, we consider internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the consolidated financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control. The Entity is not required to have, nor were we engaged to perform, an audit of its internal control over financial reporting. Accordingly, we express no such opinion.

An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies and principles used and the reasonableness of accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the consolidated financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained in our audits is sufficient and appropriate to provide a reasonable basis for our audit opinion.

We have served as the Entity's auditor since 2015.

**“DAVIDSON & COMPANY LLP”**

Vancouver, Canada Chartered Professional Accountants

March 28, 2018

**Almaden Minerals Ltd.**

## Consolidated statements of financial position

(Expressed in Canadian dollars)

	December 31, 2017 \$	December 31, 2016 \$
<b>ASSETS</b>		
Current assets		
Cash and cash equivalents (Note 16)	16,334,534	9,770,006
Accounts receivable and prepaid expenses (Note 5)	368,963	380,898
	16,703,497	10,150,904
Non-current assets		
Deposit on mill equipment (Note 9)	4,923,209	1,280,383
Property, plant and equipment (Note 10)	372,292	97,252
Exploration and evaluation assets (Note 11)	44,804,198	35,985,356
	50,099,699	37,362,991
<b>TOTAL ASSETS</b>	<b>66,803,196</b>	<b>47,513,895</b>
<b>LIABILITIES</b>		
Current liabilities		
Trade and other payables (Note 13)	638,001	857,823
Non-current liabilities		
Deferred income tax liability (Note 17)	1,434,882	1,434,882
<b>Total liabilities</b>	<b>2,072,883</b>	<b>2,292,705</b>
<b>EQUITY</b>		
Share capital (Note 12)	118,054,463	95,290,220
Reserves (Note 12)	15,528,276	13,552,101
Deficit	(68,852,426 )	(63,621,131 )
<b>Total equity</b>	<b>64,730,313</b>	<b>45,221,190</b>
<b>TOTAL EQUITY AND LIABILITIES</b>	<b>66,803,196</b>	<b>47,513,895</b>

Commitments (Note 18)

Subsequent events (Note 22)

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these consolidated financial statements.

These consolidated financial statements are authorized for issue by the Board of Directors on March 28, 2018.

They are signed on the Company's behalf by:

/s/ Duane Poliquin /s/ Mark T. Brown  
Director                      Director

**Almaden Minerals Ltd.**

## Consolidated statements of comprehensive loss

(Expressed in Canadian dollars)

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
	\$	\$	\$
Expenses			
Professional fees	683,915	512,659	1,089,276
Salaries and benefits (Note 13(b))	1,480,745	1,381,060	799,566
Travel and promotion	286,920	259,840	264,128
Depreciation (Note 10)	28,274	27,039	131,486
Office and license (Note 13(b))	145,965	120,972	150,844
Rent (Note 13(b))	173,891	146,759	175,583
Stock exchange fees	48,037	23,389	115,294
Insurance	55,007	60,499	70,202
Transfer agent fees	33,919	23,370	31,830
Directors' fees (Note 13(a))	70,000	41,000	48,000
General exploration expenses (Note 13(a))	-	1,467	432,764
Share-based payments (Note 12(d)13(a))	2,693,070	1,869,010	950,740
	5,699,743	4,467,064	4,259,713
Other income (loss)			
Interest and other income (Note 13(b))	654,741	550,271	303,403
Impairment of exploration and evaluation assets	-	-	(97,044 )
Income on exploration and evaluation assets (Note 14)	-	-	32,920
Loss on investment in associate (Note 7)	-	-	(95,892 )
Impairment of marketable securities (Note 6)	-	-	(162,000 )
Impairment of investment in associate (Note 7)	-	-	(470,700 )
Gain on transfer of spin-out assets (Note 2)	-	-	3,115,422
Loss on fair value of contingent shares receivable (Note 8)	-	-	(22,500 )
Loss on sale of property, plant and equipment (Note 10)	(1,760 )	(3,985 )	(22,692 )
Foreign exchange gain (loss)	(184,533 )	(102,726 )	129,671
	468,448	443,560	2,710,588
Loss before income taxes	(5,231,295)	(4,023,504)	(1,549,125)
Deferred income tax recovery (Note 17)	-	-	404,600
Net loss for the year	(5,231,295)	(4,023,504)	(1,144,525)
Other comprehensive loss			
Items that may be reclassified subsequently to profit or loss			
Net change in fair value of available-for-sale financial assets, net of tax of \$Nil	-	-	(170,640 )
	-	-	(162,812 )

Edgar Filing: ALMADEN MINERALS LTD - Form 20-F

Reclassification adjustment relating to available-for-sale financial assets included in net loss, net of tax of \$Nil			
Other comprehensive loss for the year	-	-	(333,452 )
Total comprehensive loss for the year	(5,231,295)	(4,023,504)	(1,477,977)
Basic and diluted net loss per share (Note 15)	(0.05 )	(0.05 )	(0.02 )

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these consolidated financial statements.

**Almaden Minerals Ltd.**

## Consolidated statements of cash flows

(Expressed in Canadian dollars)

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
	\$	\$	\$
Operating activities			
Net loss for the year	(5,231,295 )	(4,023,504 )	(1,144,525)
Items not affecting cash			
Deferred income tax recovery	-	-	(404,600 )
Loss on investment in associate	-	-	95,892
Depreciation	28,274	27,039	131,486
Unrealized foreign exchange	-	9,575	(1,370 )
Loss on fair value of contingent shares receivable	-	-	22,500
Loss on disposal of property, plant and equipment	1,760	3,985	22,692
Impairment of marketable securities	-	-	162,000
Impairment of investment in associate	-	-	470,700
Impairment of exploration and evaluation assets	-	-	97,044
Gain on transfer of spin-out assets	-	-	(3,115,422)
Share-based payments	2,693,070	1,869,010	950,740
Changes in non-cash working capital components			
Accounts receivable and prepaid expenses	11,935	2,566	(342,649 )
Trade and other payables	(178,511 )	(209,807 )	39,546
Net cash used in operating activities	(2,674,767 )	(2,321,136 )	(3,015,966)
Investing activities			
Exploration and evaluation assets deposits	-	-	683
Deposit on mill equipment	(3,642,826 )	(324,600 )	(692,000 )
Property, plant and equipment – purchase	(305,074 )	(22,538 )	(2,516 )
Exploration and evaluation assets – costs	(8,860,153 )	(5,177,485 )	(3,668,974)
Net cash used in investing activities	(12,808,053)	(5,524,623 )	(4,362,807)
Financing activities			
Cash paid to Almadex pursuant to the plan of arrangement	-	-	(3,000,000)
Issuance of shares, net of share issue costs	19,115,418	4,091,646	8,428,953
Options exercised	1,105,290	143,490	-
Share issuance cost on cashless exercise of options (Note 12(d))	(203,232 )	-	-
Warrants and finders' warrants exercised	2,029,872	7,157,851	-
Net cash from financing activities	22,047,348	11,392,987	5,428,953
Change in cash and cash equivalents	6,564,528	3,547,228	(1,949,820)
Cash and cash equivalents, beginning of year	9,770,006	6,222,778	8,172,598
Cash and cash equivalents, end of year	16,334,534	9,770,006	6,222,778
Supplemental cash and cash equivalents information – Note 16			

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these consolidated financial statements.



**Almaden Minerals Ltd.**

## Consolidated statements of changes in equity

(Unaudited – Expressed in Canadian dollars)

	Share capital		Share-based payments	Reserves	
	Number of shares	Amount		Warrants	AFS financial assets
Balance, January 1, 2015	68,728,321	\$ 87,083,931	\$ 10,372,323	\$ 299,982	\$ 333,000
Share-based payments	-	-	950,740	-	-
Private placements, net	8,926,666	8,229,361	-	180,267	-
Transfer of net assets pursuant to spin-out	-	(11,828,963 )	-	-	-
Finders' warrants issued pursuant to private placement	-	-	-	19,325	-
Shares issued pursuant to mill option agreement	407,997	273,358	-	-	-
Total comprehensive loss for the year	-	-	-	-	(332,000)
Balance, December 31, 2015	78,062,984	83,757,687	11,323,063	499,574	-
Share-based payments	-	-	1,869,010	-	-
Private placements, net	3,229,082	4,073,728	-	-	-
Finders' warrants issued pursuant to private placement	-	-	-	17,918	-
Shares issued for cash on exercise of finders' warrants	35,200	27,104	-	-	-
Fair value of finders' warrants transferred to share capital	-	5,984	-	(5,984 )	-
Shares issued for cash on exercise of warrants	4,592,667	7,130,747	-	-	-
Shares issued for cash on exercise of stock options	182,000	143,490	-	-	-
Fair value of cash stock options transferred to share capital	-	43,180	(43,180 )	-	-
Shares issued on cashless exercise of stock options	63,510	-	-	-	-
Fair value of cashless stock options transferred to share capital	-	108,300	(108,300 )	-	-
Total comprehensive loss for the year	-	-	-	-	-
Balance, December 31, 2016	86,165,443	95,290,220	13,040,593	511,508	-
Share-based payments	-	-	2,693,070	-	-
Private placements, net	12,377,207	18,934,727	-	-	-
Finders' warrants issued pursuant to private placement	-	-	-	180,691	-
Shares issued for cash on exercise of finders' warrants	30,472	43,205	-	-	-
Fair value of finders' warrants transferred to share capital	-	12,797	-	(12,797 )	-
Shares issued for cash on exercise of warrants	1,986,667	1,986,667	-	-	-
Shares issued for cash on exercise of stock options	1,107,000	1,105,290	-	-	-
Fair value of cash stock options transferred to share capital	-	496,859	(496,859 )	-	-
Shares issued on cashless exercise of stock options	532,836	-	-	-	-
Shares issuance cost on cashless exercise of options	-	(203,232 )	-	-	-
Fair value of cashless stock options transferred to share capital	-	387,930	(387,930 )	-	-
Total comprehensive loss for the year	-	-	-	-	-

Balance, December 31, 2017	102,199,625	118,054,463	14,848,874	679,402	-
----------------------------	-------------	-------------	------------	---------	---

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these consolidated financial statements.

## 1. Nature of operations

Almaden Minerals Ltd. (the “Company” or “Almaden”) was formed by amalgamation under the laws of the Province of British Columbia, Canada on February 1, 2002. The Company is an exploration stage public company that is engaged directly in the exploration and development of exploration and evaluation properties in Canada and Mexico. The address of the Company’s registered office is Suite 1710 –1177 West Hastings Street, Vancouver, BC, Canada V6E 2L3.

The Company is in the business of exploring and developing mineral projects and its principal asset is the Ixtaca precious metals project located on its Tuligtic claim in Mexico. The Company has not yet determined whether this project has economically recoverable mineral reserves and is considered to be in the exploration stage. The recoverability of amounts shown for mineral properties is dependent upon the establishment of a sufficient quantity of economically recoverable reserves, the ability of the Company to obtain the necessary financing or participation of joint venture partners to complete development of the properties, and upon future profitable production or proceeds from the disposition of exploration and evaluation assets.

## 2. Plan of arrangement

On July 31, 2015, the spin-out of Almadex Minerals Limited (“Almadex”) became effective as all conditions to the statutory plan of arrangement (the “Plan of Arrangement”) were satisfied or waived.

Pursuant to the Plan of Arrangement, Almaden’s shareholders exchanged their existing common shares of Almaden and received one “new” Almaden common share and 0.6 common shares of Almadex.

The carrying value of the net assets transferred to Almadex, pursuant to the Plan of Arrangement consisted of the following assets and liabilities:

Assets:	
Accounts receivable and prepaid expenses	\$ 142,731
Marketable securities <sup>(1)</sup>	357,672
Inventory	274,768
Investment in associate	2,108,408
Reclamation deposit	30,235
Contingent shares receivable	47,100
Property, plant and equipment	622,971
Exploration and evaluation assets	2,128,240
Total assets	5,712,125

Liabilities:

Trade and other payables	(49,748 )
Carrying value of net assets	5,662,377
Fair value of net assets distributed	8,777,799
Gain on transfer of spin-out assets	\$3,115,422

<sup>(1)</sup> The carrying value of the marketable securities spun out on July 31, 2015, reflects their mark to market fair value less an unrealized gain formerly included in reserves representing the accumulated other comprehensive income on available-for-sale financial assets of \$162,812.

## **2. Plan of arrangement** *(Continued)*

In accordance with IFRIC 17, Distribution of Non-cash Assets to Owners, the Company recognized the distribution of net assets to Almaden shareholders at fair value with the difference between that value and the carrying amount of the net assets recognized in the consolidated statement of comprehensive loss.

The Plan of Arrangement resulted in a reduction of share capital amounting to \$11,828,963 (\$8,777,799 fair value of net assets, \$3,000,000 cash paid by Almaden, and \$51,164 net contribution from spin-out assets).

The fair value of the net assets distributed was based on the share price of Almadex on August 14, 2015, its first day of trading, of \$0.20 per share multiplied by the total number of shares issued, 43,888,992.

Under the terms of the Plan of Arrangement, each issued and outstanding Almaden option and warrant was adjusted to compensate the option and warrant holders for the assets spun-out. The exercise price paid was allocated between the Company and Almadex on the same ratio that the fair market value of the spin-out assets had, to the fair market value of the assets of the Company. See Note 12 (c) and (d).

## **3. Basis of presentation**

### *(a) Statement of Compliance with International Financial Reporting Standards (“IFRS”)*

These consolidated financial statements have been prepared in accordance and compliance with IFRS as issued by the International Accounting Standards Board (“IASB”) and interpretations of the International Financial Reporting Interpretations Committee (“IFRIC”).

### *(b) Basis of preparation*

These consolidated financial statements have been prepared on a historical cost basis except for financial instruments classified as fair value through profit or loss, and available-for-sale, which have been measured at fair value.

These consolidated financial statements, including comparatives, have been prepared on the basis of IFRS standards that are effective as at December 31, 2017.

Certain amounts in prior years have been reclassified to conform to the current period presentation.

(c) *Functional currency*

The functional and reporting currency of the Company and its subsidiaries is the Canadian dollar.

### 3. Basis of Presentation (Continued)

#### (d) Significant accounting judgments and estimates

The preparation of these consolidated financial statements requires management to make judgements and estimates that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities at the date of the consolidated financial statements and reported amounts of expenses during the reporting period. Actual outcomes could differ from these judgements and estimates. The consolidated financial statements include judgements and estimates which, by their nature, are uncertain. The impacts of such judgements and estimates are pervasive throughout the consolidated financial statements, and may require accounting adjustments based on future occurrences. Revisions to accounting estimates are recognized in the period in which the estimate is revised and the revision affects both current and future periods.

Significant assumptions about the future and other sources of judgements and estimates that management has made at the statement of financial position dates, that could result in a material adjustment to the carrying amounts of assets and liabilities, in the event that actual results differ from assumptions made, relate to, but are not limited to, the following:

#### Critical Judgments

The analysis of the functional currency for each entity of the Company determined by conducting an analysis of the consideration factors identified in IAS 21, "The Effect of Changes in Foreign Exchange Rates". In concluding that the Canadian dollar is the functional currency of the parent and its subsidiary companies, management considered the currency that mainly influences the cost of providing goods and services in each jurisdiction in which the Company operates. As no single currency was clearly dominant, the Company also considered secondary indicators including the currency in which funds from financing activities are denominated and the currency in which funds are retained.

The determination that the carrying amount of the Tuligtic Project will be recovered through use rather than sale (Notes 11 and 17).

#### Estimates

- o The recoverability of accounts receivable which is included in the consolidated statements of financial position;
- o The estimated annual gains or losses from income and dilution on the former investment in associate;
- o The estimated useful lives of property, plant and equipment which are included in the consolidated statements of financial position and the related depreciation included in the profit or loss;

<sup>o</sup> The recoverability of the value of the exploration and evaluation assets which is recorded in the consolidated statements of financial position (Note 4(f));



**3. Basis of Presentation** *(Continued)**(d) Significant accounting judgments and estimates (continued)*Estimates *(continued)*

The Company uses the Black-Scholes option pricing model to determine the fair value of options and warrants in order to calculate share-based payments expense and the fair value of finders' warrants and stock options. Certain inputs into the model are estimates that involve considerable judgment and are or could be affected by significant factors that are out of the Company's control;

The provision for income taxes which is included in profit or loss and the composition of deferred income tax liability included in the consolidated statement of financial position and the evaluation of the recoverability of deferred tax assets based on an assessment of the Company's ability to utilize the underlying future tax deductions against future taxable income prior to expiry of those deductions;

The assessment of indications of impairment of each exploration and evaluation asset and related determination of the net realizable value and write-down of those assets where applicable (Note 4(f));

**4. Significant Accounting Policies***(a) Basis of consolidation*

These consolidated financial statements include the accounts of the Company and its wholly-owned subsidiaries as follows:

	Jurisdiction	Nature of operations
Puebla Holdings Inc.	Canada	holding company
Minera Gorrion, S.A. de C.V.	Mexico	exploration company
(i) Almaden America Inc.	USA	exploration company
(i) Republic Resources Ltd.	Canada	service company
(i) Ixtaca Precious Metals Inc.	Canada	holding company
(i) Pangeon Holdings Ltd.	Canada	holding company
(i) Almaden de Mexico, S.A. de C.V.	Mexico	exploration company
(i) Minera Gavilan, S.A. de C.V.	Mexico	exploration company
(i) Compania Minera Zapata, S.A. de C.V.	Mexico	exploration company
(i) Minera Alondra, S.A. de C.V.	Mexico	holding company

- (i) Included in consolidation until July 31, 2015 due to the Plan of Arrangement (Note 2).

Investments where the Company has the ability to exercise significant influence are accounted for using the equity method. Under this method, the Company's share of the investee's profit or loss is included in profit or loss and its investments therein are adjusted by a like amount. Dividends received from these investments are credited to the investment. The Company's former 38.8% interest in Gold Mountain Mining Corporation was accounted for using the equity method until the Plan of Arrangement.

#### 4. Significant Accounting Policies (Continued)

(a) Basis of consolidation (continued)

Inter-company balances and transactions, including unrealized income and expenses arising from inter-company transactions, are eliminated in preparing these consolidated financial statements. Unrealized gains arising from transactions with equity accounted investees are eliminated against the investment to the extent of the Company's interest in the investee. Unrealized losses are eliminated in the same way as unrealized gains, but only to the extent that there is no evidence of impairment.

(b) Foreign currencies

Transactions in currencies other than the functional currency are recorded at the rates of exchange prevailing on the transaction dates. At each financial position reporting date, monetary assets and liabilities that are denominated in foreign currencies are translated at the rates prevailing at the date of the statement of financial position. Non-monetary items that are measured in terms of historical cost in a foreign currency are not retranslated.

(c) Financial instruments

#### Financial assets

The Company classifies its financial assets into one of the following categories, depending on the purpose for which the asset was acquired. The Company's accounting policy for each category is as follows:

*Fair value through profit or loss* - This category comprises derivatives or assets acquired or incurred principally for the purpose of selling or repurchasing it in the near term. They are carried in the statement of financial position at fair value with changes in fair value recognized in profit or loss.

*Loans and receivables* - These assets are non-derivative financial assets with fixed or determinable payments that are not quoted in an active market. They are carried at cost less any provision for impairment. Individually significant receivables are considered for impairment when they are past due or when other objective evidence is received that a

specific counterparty will default. The Company classifies its cash and cash equivalents and accounts receivable as “loans and receivables”.

*Held-to-maturity investments* - These assets are non-derivative financial assets with fixed or determinable payments and fixed maturities that the Company's management has the positive intention and ability to hold to maturity. These assets are measured at amortized cost using the effective interest method. If there is objective evidence that the investment is impaired, determined by reference to external credit ratings and other relevant indicators, the financial asset is measured at the present value of estimated future cash flows. Any changes to the carrying amount of the investment, including impairment losses, are recognized in profit or loss.

#### **4. Significant Accounting Policies** *(Continued)*

##### *(c) Financial instruments (continued)*

*Available-for-sale* - Non-derivative financial assets not included in the above categories are classified as available-for-sale. They are carried at fair value with changes in fair value recognized directly in other comprehensive income within reserves, as equity. Where a decline in the fair value of an available for sale financial asset constitutes objective evidence of significant or prolonged decline in value, the amount of the loss is removed from equity and recognized in profit or loss.

All financial assets except for those at fair value through profit or loss are subject to review for impairment at least at each reporting date. Financial assets are impaired when there is any objective evidence that a financial asset or a group of financial assets is impaired. Different criteria to determine impairment are applied for each category of financial assets, which are described above.

##### Financial liabilities

The Company classifies its financial liabilities into one of two categories, depending on the purpose of the liability. The Company's accounting policy for each category is as follows:

*Fair value through profit or loss* - This category comprises derivatives, or liabilities acquired or incurred principally for the purpose of selling or repurchasing it in the near term. They are carried in the statements of financial position at fair value with changes in fair value recognized in profit or loss.

*Other financial liabilities* - This category includes trade and other payables, all of which are recognized at amortized cost.

##### *(d) Cash and cash equivalents*

Cash equivalents include money market instruments which are readily convertible into cash or have maturities at the date of purchase of less than ninety days.

(e) *Property, plant and equipment*

Property, plant and equipment are stated at cost less accumulated depreciation and impairment losses, and are depreciated annually on a declining-balance basis if available for use at the following rates:

Automotive equipment	30%
Furniture, fixtures and other	20%
Computer hardware and software	30%
Geological library	20%
Field equipment	20%
Mill equipment	7 %

**4. Significant Accounting Policies** *(Continued)*

*(f) Exploration and evaluation assets*

The Company is in the exploration stage with respect to its investment in exploration and evaluation assets and accordingly follows the practice of capitalizing all costs relating to the acquisition of, exploration for and development of mineral claims to which the Company has rights and crediting all proceeds received from farm-out arrangements or recovery of costs against the cost of the related claims. Acquisition costs include, but are not exclusive to land surface rights acquired. Deferred exploration costs include, but are not exclusive to geological, geophysical studies, annual mining taxes, exploratory drilling and sampling. At such time as commercial production commences, these costs will be charged to profit or loss on a unit-of-production method based on proven and probable reserves. The aggregate costs related to abandoned mineral claims are charged to profit or loss at the time of any abandonment or when it has been determined that there is evidence of an impairment.

The Company considers the following facts and circumstances in determining if it should test exploration and evaluation assets for impairment:

- (i) the period for which the Company has the right to explore in the specific area has expired during the period or will expire in the near future, and is not expected to be renewed;
- (ii) substantive expenditure on further exploration for and evaluation of mineral resources in the specific area is neither budgeted nor planned;
- (iii) exploration for and evaluation of mineral resources in the specific area have not led to the discovery of commercially viable quantities of mineral resources and the entity has decided to discontinue such activities in the specific area; and
- (iv) sufficient data exists to indicate that, although a development in the specific area is likely to proceed, the carrying amount of the exploration and evaluation assets is unlikely to be recovered in full from successful development or by sale.

An impairment charge may be reversed but only to the extent that this does not exceed the original carrying value of the property that would have resulted if no impairment had been recognized. General exploration costs in areas of interest in which the Company has not secured rights are expensed as incurred.

The recoverability of amounts shown for exploration and evaluation assets is dependent upon the discovery of economically recoverable reserves, the ability of the Company to obtain financing to complete development of the properties, and on future production or proceeds of disposition.

The Company recognizes in profit or loss costs recovered on exploration and evaluation assets when amounts received or receivable are in excess of the carrying amount.



#### **4. Significant Accounting Policies** *(Continued)*

*(f) Exploration and evaluation assets (continued)*

Once the technical feasibility and commercial viability of the extraction of mineral resources in an area of interest are demonstrable, exploration and evaluation assets attributable to that area of interest are first tested for impairment and then reclassified to development asset within property, plant and equipment.

All capitalized exploration and evaluation expenditures are monitored for indications of impairment.

Where a potential impairment is indicated, assessments are performed for each area of interest. To the extent that exploration expenditure is not expected to be recovered, it is charged to profit or loss. Exploration areas where reserves have been discovered, but require major capital expenditure before production can begin, are continually evaluated to ensure that commercial quantities of reserves exist or to ensure that additional exploration work is underway as planned.

*(g) Impairment of property, plant and equipment*

Property, plant and equipment are reviewed for impairment at least annually, or if there is any indication that the carrying amount may not be recoverable. If any such indication is present, the recoverable amount of the asset is estimated in order to determine whether impairment exists. Where the asset does not generate cash flows that are independent from other assets, the Company estimates the recoverable amount of the cash generating unit to which the asset belongs.

An asset's recoverable amount is the higher of fair value less costs of disposal and value in use. In assessing value in use, the estimated future cash flows are discounted to their present value, using a pre-tax discount rate that reflects current market assessments of the time value of money and the risks specific to the asset for which estimates of future cash flows have not been adjusted.

If the recoverable amount of an asset or cash generating unit is estimated to be less than its carrying amount, the carrying amount is reduced to the recoverable amount by way of recording an impairment charge to profit or loss. Where an impairment subsequently reverses, the carrying amount is increased to the revised estimate of recoverable amount but only to the extent that this does not exceed the carrying value that would have been determined if no

impairment had previously been recognized.

#### **4. Significant Accounting Policies** *(Continued)*

##### *(h) Income taxes*

Income tax expense comprises current and deferred tax. Current tax and deferred tax are recognized in profit or loss except to the extent that it relates to items recognized directly in equity or in other comprehensive income.

Current tax is the expected tax payable or receivable on the taxable income or loss for the year, using tax rates enacted at the reporting date, and any adjustment to tax payable in respect of previous years.

Deferred tax is recognized in respect of temporary differences between the carrying amounts of assets and liabilities for financial reporting purposes and the amounts used for taxation purposes. Deferred tax is not recognized for the following temporary differences: the initial recognition of assets or liabilities in a transaction that is not a business combination and that affects neither accounting nor taxable profit or loss, and differences relating to investments in subsidiaries and jointly controlled entities to the extent that it is probable that they will not reverse in the foreseeable future. In addition, deferred tax is not recognized for taxable temporary differences arising on the initial recognition of goodwill. Deferred tax is measured at the tax rates that are expected to be applied to temporary differences when they reverse, based on the laws that have been enacted or substantively enacted by the reporting date.

Deferred tax assets and liabilities are offset if there is a legally enforceable right to offset current tax liabilities and assets, and they relate to income taxes levied by the same tax authority on the same taxable entity, or on different tax entities, but they intend to settle current tax liabilities and assets on a net basis or their tax assets and liabilities will be realized simultaneously.

A deferred tax asset is recognized for unused tax losses, tax credits and deductible temporary differences, to the extent that it is probable that future taxable profits will be available against which they can be utilized. Deferred tax assets are reviewed at each reporting date and are reduced to the extent that it is no longer probable that the related tax benefit will be realized.

##### *(i) Share-based payments*

The Company's stock option plan allows Company employees, directors, officers and consultants to acquire shares of the Company. The fair value of options granted is recognized as share-based payment expense with a corresponding

increase in equity reserves. An individual is classified as an employee when the individual is an employee for legal or tax purposes (direct employee) or provides services similar to those performed by a direct employee.

Fair value is measured at grant date, and each tranche is recognized using the graded vesting method over the period during which the options vest. The fair value of the options granted is measured using the Black-Scholes option pricing model, taking into account the terms and conditions upon which the options were granted. At each financial position reporting date, the amount recognized as an expense is adjusted to reflect the actual number of stock options that are expected to vest. In situations where equity instruments are issued to consultants and some or all of the goods or services received by the entity as consideration cannot be specifically identified, they are measured at the fair value of the share-based payment. Otherwise, share-based payments are measured at the fair value of goods or services received.

**4. Significant Accounting Policies** *(Continued)*

*(j) Share capital*

Proceeds from the exercise of stock options and warrants are recorded as share capital in the amount for which the option or warrant enabled the holder to purchase a share in the Company, in addition to the proportionate amount of reserves originally created at the issuance of the stock options or warrants. Share capital issued for non-monetary consideration is valued at the closing market price at the date of issuance. The proceeds from the issuance of units are allocated between common shares and common share purchase warrants based on the residual value method. Under this method, the proceeds are allocated to common shares based on the fair value of a common share at the announcement date of the unit offering and any residual remaining is allocated to common share purchase warrants.

*(k) Reclamation and closure cost obligations*

Decommissioning and restoration provisions are recorded when a present legal or constructive obligation exists as a result of past events where it is probable that an outflow of resources embodying economic benefits will be required to settle the obligation, and a reliable estimate of the amount of the obligation can be made.

The amount recognized as a provision is the best estimate of the consideration required to settle the present obligation at the reporting date, taking into account the risks and uncertainties surrounding the obligation and discount rates. Where a provision is measured using the cash flows estimated to settle the present obligation, its carrying amount is the present value of those cash flows discounted for the market discount rate.

Over time the discounted liability is increased for the changes in the present value based on the current market discount rates and liability risks. When some or all of the economic benefits required to settle a provision are expected to be recovered from a third party, the receivable is recognized as an asset if it is virtually certain that reimbursement will be received and the amount receivable can be measured reliably.

When the Company enters into an option agreement on its exploration and evaluations assets, as part of the option agreement, responsibility for any reclamation and remediation becomes the responsibility of the optionee.

*(l) Net loss per share*

The Company presents the basic and diluted net loss per share data for its common shares, calculated by dividing the loss attributable to common shareholders of the Company by the weighted average number of common shares outstanding during the period. Diluted net loss per share is determined by adjusting the net loss attributable to common shareholders and the weighted average number of common shares outstanding for the effects of all dilutive potential common shares (Note 15).

#### **4. Significant Accounting Policies** *(Continued)*

*(m) Application of new and revised accounting standards effective January 1, 2017*

The following new accounting standards and amendments which the Company adopted and are effective for the Company's interim and annual consolidated financial statements commencing January 1, 2017:

IFRS 7: Amended to require additional disclosures on transition from IAS 39 and IFRS 9.

*(n) Future accounting standards*

Certain pronouncements were issued by the IASB or IFRIC but are not yet effective as at December 31, 2017. The Company intends to adopt these standards and interpretations when they become effective. The Company does not expect these standards to have an impact on its consolidated financial statements. Pronouncements that are not applicable to the Company have been excluded from those described below.

The following are the accounting standards issued but not yet effective.

##### Revenue recognition

IFRS 15 - In May 2014, the IASB issued IFRS 15 – Revenue from Contracts with Customers ("IFRS 15") which supersedes IAS 11 – Construction Contracts; IAS 18 – Revenue; IFRIC 13 – Customer Loyalty Programmes; IFRIC 15 – Agreements for the Construction of Real Estate; IFRIC 18 – Transfers of Assets from Customers; and SIC 31 – Revenue – Barter Transactions involving Advertising Services. IFRS 15 establishes a single five-step model framework for determining the nature, amount, timing and uncertainty of revenue and cash flows arising from a contract with a customer. The standard is effective for annual periods beginning on or after January 1, 2018, with early adoption permitted. The Company expects no impact on its consolidated financial statements upon adoption of this standard.

##### Financial instruments

IFRS 9 - In July 2014, the IASB issued the final version of IFRS 9 – Financial Instruments ("IFRS 9") to replace IAS 39 – Financial Instruments: Recognition and Measurement. IFRS 9 provides a revised model for recognition and measurement of financial instruments and a single, forward-looking 'expected loss' impairment model. IFRS 9 also includes a substantially reformed approach to hedge accounting. The standard is effective for annual periods beginning on or after January 1, 2018, with early adoption permitted. The Company has determined that the adoption of this standard will not have a significant impact on its future consolidated financial statements.



**4. Significant Accounting Policies (Continued)***(n) Future accounting standards (continued)*Leases

IFRS 16 - In January 2016, the IASB issued IFRS 16 – Leases ("IFRS 16") which replaces IAS 17 – Leases and its associated interpretative guidance. IFRS 16 applies a control model to the identification of leases, distinguishing between a lease and a service contract on the basis of whether the customer controls the asset being leased. For those assets determined to meet the definition of a lease, IFRS 16 introduces significant changes to the accounting by lessees, introducing a single, on-balance sheet accounting model that is similar to current finance lease accounting, with limited exceptions for short-term leases or leases of low value assets. Lessor accounting remains similar to current accounting practice. The standard is effective for annual periods beginning on or after January 1, 2019, with early application permitted for entities that apply IFRS 15. The Company is currently evaluating the impact the final standard is expected to have on its consolidated financial statements. The Company is currently considering the impact, if any, of the standard on its future consolidated financial statements.

**5. Accounts receivable and prepaid expenses**

Accounts receivable and prepaid expenses consist of the following:

	December 31, 2017	December 31, 2016
Accounts receivable (Note 13(b))	\$ 243,971	\$ 248,379
Prepaid expenses	124,992	132,519
	\$ 368,963	\$ 380,898

At December 31, 2017, the Company has recorded value added taxes of \$444,729 (2016 - \$248,142) included in exploration and evaluation assets as the value added tax relates to certain projects and is expected to be recovered when the assets are sold (Note 11).

**6. Marketable Securities**

The Company formerly held marketable securities consisting of equity securities of publicly traded companies, which were designated as available-for-sale, and valued at fair value. During the year ended December 31, 2015, the Company determined that \$162,000 of unrealized losses previously recorded in other comprehensive income was a

result of significant or prolonged losses. These assets were transferred to Almadex as detailed in the Plan of Arrangement on July 31, 2015 (Note 2).

**7. Investment in Associate*****Gold Mountain Mining Corporation (“Gold Mountain”)***

The Company formerly held 26,750,000 common shares of Gold Mountain. The Company accounted for this investment using the equity method as the Company had determined that significant influence existed. The Company had recorded its equity share of Gold Mountain’s loss during the year ended December 31, 2015 in the amount of \$95,892. During the year ended December 31, 2015, the Company wrote down its investment in associate to its fair value and recorded impairment charges of \$470,700 as the decline in value was considered significant and prolonged. The investment in associate was transferred to Almadex as detailed in the Plan of Arrangement on July 31, 2015 (Note 2).

The continuity of the Company’s investment in associate for the year ended December 31, 2015 is as follows:

	2015
Balance, beginning of year	\$2,675,000
Company’s share of net loss	(95,892 )
Impairment	(470,700 )
Transfer to Almadex	(2,108,408)
Balance, end of year	\$-

**8. Contingent Shares Receivable****(a) *Gold Mountain Mining Corporation***

The Company formerly held contingent shares receivable in Gold Mountain. During the year ended December 31, 2015, a gain on fair value adjustment of \$Nil was recorded. This asset was transferred to Almadex as detailed in the Plan of Arrangement on July 31, 2015 (Note 2).

**(b) *Goldgroup Mining Inc.***

The Company formerly held contingent shares receivable in Goldgroup Mining Inc. During the year ended December 31, 2015, a loss on fair value adjustment of \$22,500 was recorded. This asset was transferred to Almadex as detailed

in the Plan of Arrangement on July 31, 2015 (Note 2).

### 9. Deposit on mill equipment

On October 19, 2015, the Company entered into a Mill Purchase Option Agreement (the “Agreement”) to acquire the Rock Creek mill. Pursuant to the Agreement, Almaden has the exclusive right and option to purchase the mill for total cash payments of US\$6,500,000, plus the issuance of 407,997 common shares (issued with a fair value of \$273,358), subject to adjustment in certain circumstances (the “Option”).

In order to exercise the Option, Almaden must make option payments according to the following schedule:

Date	Payment Status	USD	CAD
October 21, 2015	Cash paid	\$250,000	\$346,000
November 25, 2015	407,997 shares issued		273,358
December 29, 2015	Cash paid	250,000	346,000
December 31, 2015			965,358
March 17, 2016	Cash paid	250,000	324,600
Unrealized foreign exchange loss on deposit on mill equipment			(9,575 )
December 31, 2016			\$1,280,383
June 13, 2017	Cash paid	2,000,000	2,647,600
Mill Deposit			3,927,983
Mill Mobilization Deposit			
April 5, 2017	Cash paid	\$350,000	469,385
July 19, 2017	Cash paid	\$417,500	525,841
			995,226
December 31, 2017			\$4,923,209

In order to exercise the Option, Almaden must make a final option payment on or before June 15, 2018 for \$3,750,000 USD (\$4,704,375 CAD). The payments are not refundable upon termination of the option.

The Company has begun a mobilization plan to move the Rock Creek mill from Nome, Alaska to Mexico. A deposit of \$995,226 (\$767,500 USD) was paid during the period ended December 31, 2017 to set up camp for the dismantlement of the mill.

**10. Property, plant and equipment**

	Automotive equipment	Furniture and fixtures and other	Computer hardware	Computer software	Geologica library	Field equipment	Mill equipment	Total
	\$	\$	\$	\$	\$	\$	\$	\$
<b>Cost</b>								
December 31, 2016	146,569	135,064	231,451	185,263	51,760	245,647	-	995,754
Additions	-	19,029	15,748	4,300	-	66,045	199,952	305,074
Disposals	(36,529 )	-	-	-	-	-	-	(36,529 )
December 31, 2017	110,040	154,093	247,199	189,563	51,760	311,692	199,952	1,264,299
<b>Accumulated depreciation</b>								
December 31, 2016	144,559	131,569	204,742	155,024	48,766	213,842	-	898,502
Disposals	(34,769 )	-	-	-	-	-	-	(34,769 )
Depreciation	250	2,915	8,960	9,187	600	6,362	-	28,274
December 31, 2017	110,040	134,484	213,702	164,211	49,366	220,204	-	892,007
<b>Carrying amounts</b>								
December 31, 2016	2,010	3,495	26,709	30,239	2,994	31,805	-	97,252
December 31, 2017	-	19,609	33,497	25,352	2,394	91,488	199,952	372,292

During the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company disposed property, plant and equipment for \$Nil proceeds and recorded a loss on disposal of property, plant and equipment of \$1,760.

The Company has acquired containers to begin a mobilization plan to move the Rock Creek mill (Note 9) from Nome, Alaska to Mexico. As at December 31, 2017, container costs of \$199,952 are recorded in property, plant and equipment and will be depreciated when the mill equipment is in the condition and location ready for use.

**10. Property, plant and equipment** *(Continued)*

	Automotive equipment	Furniture and fixtures and other	Computer hardware	Computer software	Geological library	Field equipment	Total
	\$	\$	\$	\$	\$	\$	\$
<b>Cost</b>							
December 31, 2015	174,462	135,064	218,166	176,010	51,760	245,647	1,001,109
Additions	-	-	13,285	9,253	-	-	22,538
Disposals	(27,893 )	-	-	-	-	-	(27,893 )
December 31, 2016	146,569	135,064	231,451	185,263	51,760	245,647	995,754
<b>Accumulated depreciation</b>							
December 31, 2015	167,604	130,695	198,221	144,943	48,018	205,890	895,371
Disposals	(23,908 )	-	-	-	-	-	(23,908 )
Depreciation	863	874	6,521	10,081	748	7,952	27,039
December 31, 2016	144,559	131,569	204,742	155,024	48,766	213,842	898,502
<b>Carrying amounts</b>							
December 31, 2015	6,858	4,369	19,945	31,067	3,742	39,757	105,738
December 31, 2016	2,010	3,495	26,709	30,239	2,994	31,805	97,252

During the year ended December 31, 2016, the Company disposed property, plant and equipment for \$Nil proceeds and recorded a loss on disposal of property, plant and equipment of \$3,985 in the consolidated statements of comprehensive loss.

**11. Exploration and evaluation assets**

	Tuligtic	Other Property	Total
	\$	\$	\$
Exploration and evaluation assets			
Acquisition costs:			
Opening balance - (December 31, 2016)	4,780,570	1	4,780,571
Additions	2,757,007	-	2,757,007
Closing balance - (December 31, 2017)	7,537,577	1	7,537,578
Deferred exploration costs:			
Opening balance - (December 31, 2016)	31,204,785	-	31,204,785
Costs incurred during the period			
Drilling and related costs	1,053,771	-	1,053,771
Professional/technical fees	112,191	-	112,191
Claim maintenance/lease costs	160,251	-	160,251
Geochemical, metallurgy	746,103	-	746,103
Technical studies	1,698,055	-	1,698,055
Travel and accommodation	390,927	-	390,927
Geology, geophysics and exploration	795,731	-	795,731
Supplies and misc.	118,015	-	118,015
Water exploration	7,981	-	7,981
Environmental	534,081	-	534,081
Value-added tax (Note 5)	444,729	-	444,729
Total deferred exploration costs during the period	6,061,835	-	6,061,835
Closing balance - (December 31, 2017)	37,266,620	-	37,266,620
Total exploration and evaluation assets	44,804,197	1	44,804,198



**11. Exploration and evaluation assets (Continued)**

	Tuligtic	Other Property	Total
	\$	\$	\$
Exploration and evaluation assets			
Acquisition costs:			
Opening balance - (December 31, 2015)	3,202,134	1	3,202,135
Additions	1,578,436	-	1,578,436
Closing balance - (December 31, 2016)	4,780,570	1	4,780,571
Deferred exploration costs:			
Opening balance - (December 31, 2015)	27,335,875	-	27,335,875
Costs incurred during the period			
Drilling and related costs	666,210	-	666,210
Professional/technical fees	139,916	-	139,916
Claim maintenance/lease costs	138,901	-	138,901
Geochemical, metallurgy	611,344	-	611,344
Technical studies	1,048,807	-	1,048,807
Travel and accommodation	273,178	-	273,178
Geology, geophysics and exploration	489,919	-	489,919
Supplies and misc.	31,636	-	31,636
Water exploration	97,232	-	97,232
Reclamation, environmental	123,625	-	123,625
Value-added tax (Note 5)	248,142	-	248,142
Total deferred exploration costs during the period	3,868,910	-	3,868,910
Closing balance - (December 31, 2016)	31,204,785	-	31,204,785
Total exploration and evaluation assets	35,985,355	1	35,985,356

During the year ended December 31, 2016, the Company entered into two option agreements to secure land holdings on the Tuligtic project. The Company has the option to acquire a 100% ownership of two land holdings for total cash payments of \$25,000,000 Mexico pesos (MXN) as follows:

Dates	Payments (MXN)	CAD	Payment Status
November 28, 2016	\$ 10,000,000	\$651,200	Paid
November 28, 2018	\$ 15,000,000	\$976,500	Outstanding

Payments are not refundable upon termination of the option agreement.

## **11. Exploration and evaluation assets (Continued)**

The following is a description of the Company's most significant property interests and related spending commitments:

### **(a) Tuligtic**

In 2001, the Company acquired by staking a 100% interest in the Tuligtic property in Puebla, Mexico. The property contains the Ixtaca Zone.

### **(b) Other Property**

The Company holds a 40% carried interest in the Logan property located in the Yukon Territory, Canada. The project is carried at a nominal value of \$1.

## **12. Share capital and reserves**

### **(a) Authorized share capital**

At December 31, 2017, the authorized share capital comprised an unlimited number of common shares. The common shares do not have a par value. All issued shares are fully paid.

### **(b) Details of private placement and other issues of common shares in 2017, 2016 and 2015**

On June 1, 2017, the Company closed a bought deal private placement by the issuance of 9,857,800 units at a price of \$1.75 per unit for gross proceeds of \$17,251,150. Each unit consists of one common share and one-half of one non-transferable common share purchase warrant. Each whole warrant allows the holder to purchase one common share of the Company at a price of \$2.45 per share until June 1, 2020. Share issue costs included a finder's fee of \$1,035,069 in cash, and finders' warrants to purchase up to 295,734 common shares at a price of \$2.00 per common share until June 1, 2019. The fair value of the finders' warrants was \$171,526. In connection with the private placement, the Company also incurred \$296,823 in other cash share issue costs. These amounts were recorded as a reduction to share capital. The proceeds of the private placement were allocated entirely to share capital.

On February 7, 2017, the Company closed a non-brokered private placement by the issuance of 2,519,407 units at a price of \$1.35 per unit for gross proceeds of \$3,401,199. Each unit consists of one common share and one-half of one non-transferable common share purchase warrant. Each whole warrant allows the holder to purchase one common share of the Company at a price of \$2.00 per share until August 7, 2019. Share issue costs included a finder's fee of \$88,631 in cash, and finders' warrants to purchase up to 17,911 common shares at a price of \$1.35 per common share until August 7, 2019. The fair value of the finders' warrants was \$9,165. In connection with the private placement, the Company also incurred \$116,408 in other cash share issue costs. These amounts were recorded as a reduction to share capital. The proceeds of the private placement were allocated entirely to share capital.

**12. Share capital and reserves** *(Continued)***(b) Details of private placement and other issues of common shares in 2017, 2016 and 2015** *(continued)*

On May 25, 2016, the Company closed a non-brokered private placement by the issuance of 3,229,082 units at a price of \$1.35 per unit for gross proceeds to the Company of \$4,359,260. Each unit consists of one common share and one-half of one non-transferable common share purchase warrant. Each whole warrant allows the holder to purchase one common share of the Company at a price of \$2.00 per share until November 25, 2018. Share issue costs included a finder's fee of \$147,925 in cash, and finders' warrants to purchase up to 45,944 common shares at a price of \$1.44 per common share until November 25, 2018. The fair value of the finders' warrants was \$17,918. In connection with the private placement, the Company also incurred \$119,689 in share issue costs. These amounts were recorded as reduction to share capital. The proceeds of the private placement were allocated entirely to share capital.

On November 25, 2015, the Company issued 407,997 common shares at a fair value of \$0.67 per share as a payment for the Mill Purchase Option Agreement (Note 9).

On November 17, 2015, the Company closed a non-brokered private placement by the issuance of 4,506,666 units at a price of \$0.75 per unit for gross proceeds to the Company of \$3,380,000. Each unit consists of one common share and one-half of one non-transferable common share purchase warrant. Each whole warrant allows the holder to purchase one common share of the Company at a price of \$1.00 per share until November 17, 2017. A finder's fee of \$73,550 in cash and finder's warrants to purchase up to 35,200 common shares at a price of \$0.77 per common share until November 17, 2017 was paid on a portion of the placement. The fair value of the finders' warrants was \$5,984. In connection with the private placement, the Company also incurred \$43,075 share issue costs. \$3,199,733 of the proceeds from the private placement was allocated to share capital, and \$180,267 to the warrants under the residual value method.

On February 11, 2015, the Company closed a non-brokered private placement by the issuance of 4,420,000 units at a price of \$1.25 per unit for gross proceeds to the Company of \$5,525,000. Each unit consists of one common share and one-half of one non-transferable common share purchase warrant. Each whole warrant allows the holder to purchase one common share of the Company at a price of \$2.00 per share until February 11, 2016. A finder's fee of \$212,626 in cash and finder's warrants to purchase up to 49,410 common shares at a price of \$1.28 per common share until February 11, 2016 was paid on a portion of the placement. The fair value of the finders' warrants was \$13,341. In connection with the private placement, the Company also incurred \$146,796 share issue costs. The proceeds of the private placement were allocated entirely to share capital.

**12. Share capital and reserves (Continued)****(c) Warrants**

The continuity of warrants for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015 are as follows:

Expiry date	Exercise price	Dec 31, 2016	Issued	Exercised	Expired	December 31, 2017
November 17, 2017	\$ 1.00	2,036,667	-	(1,986,667)	(50,000)	-
November 25, 2018	\$ 2.00	1,614,541	-	-	-	1,614,541
November 25, 2018	\$ 1.44	45,944	-	(22,972 )	-	22,972
June 1, 2019	\$ 2.00	-	295,734	-	-	295,734
August 7, 2019	\$ 2.00	-	1,259,704	-	-	1,259,704
August 7, 2019	\$ 1.35	-	17,911	(7,500 )	-	10,411
June 1, 2020	\$ 2.45	-	4,928,900	-	-	4,928,900
Warrants outstanding and exercisable		3,697,152	6,502,249	(2,017,139)	(50,000)	8,132,262
Weighted average exercise price		\$1.44	\$2.34	\$1.01	\$1.00	\$2.27

The weighted average remaining life of warrants outstanding at December 31, 2017 was 1.95 years (2016 – 1.34 years).

Expiry date	Exercise price	December 31, 2015	Issued	Exercised	Expired/ cancelled	December 31, 2016
February 11, 2016	\$ 1.76	2,210,000	-	-	(2,210,000)	-
February 11, 2016	\$ 1.12	49,410	-	-	(49,410 )	-
July 17, 2016	\$ 1.58	4,376,000	-	(4,376,000)	-	-
July 17, 2016	\$ 1.32	186,000	-	-	(186,000 )	-
November 17, 2017	\$ 1.00	2,253,334	-	(216,667 )	-	2,036,667
November 17, 2017	\$ 0.77	35,200	-	(35,200 )	-	-
November 25, 2018	\$ 2.00	-	1,614,541	-	-	1,614,541
November 25, 2018	\$ 1.44	-	45,944	-	-	45,944
Warrants outstanding and exercisable		<b>9,109,944</b>	<b>1,660,485</b>	(4,627,867)	(2,445,410)	<b>3,697,152</b>
Weighted average exercise price		\$1.47	\$1.98	\$1.55	\$1.71	\$1.44

Expiry date	Exercise price	December 31, 2014	Issued	Exercised	Expired/ cancelled	December 31, 2015
August 1, 2015	\$ 1.50	48,000	-	-	(48,000 )	-

Edgar Filing: ALMADEN MINERALS LTD - Form 20-F

August 1, 2015	\$ 2.00	2,000,000	-	-	(2,000,000)	-
July 17, 2016	* \$ 1.58	4,376,000	-	-	-	4,376,000
July 17, 2016	* \$ 1.32	186,000	-	-	-	186,000
February 11, 2016	* \$ 1.76	-	2,210,000	-	-	2,210,000
February 11, 2016	* \$ 1.12	-	49,410	-	-	49,410
November 17, 2017	\$ 1.00	-	2,253,334	-	-	2,253,334
November 17, 2017	\$ 0.77	-	35,200	-	-	35,200
Warrants outstanding and exercisable		6,610,000	4,547,944	-	(2,048,000)	9,109,944
Weighted average exercise price		\$1.70	\$1.37	-	\$1.99	\$1.47

\* On August 28, 2015, the Company adjusted the exercise price on outstanding warrants proportionately to reflect the value transferred to Almadex.

**12. Share capital and reserves (Continued)****(c) Warrants (continued)**

The weighted average fair value of finders' warrants granted during the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015 calculated using the Black-Scholes model at the issue dates, are as follows:

**Weighted average assumptions used**

Number of warrants	Date of issue	Fair value per share	Risk free interest rate	Expected life (in years)	Expected volatility	Expected dividends
295,734	June 1, 2017	\$ 0.58	0.71 %	2	66.26 %	\$Nil
17,911	February 7, 2017	\$ 0.51	0.72 %	2.50	61.54 %	\$Nil
45,944	May 25, 2016	\$ 0.39	0.59 %	2	55.53 %	\$Nil
35,200	November 17, 2015	\$ 0.17	0.38 %	2	47.77 %	\$Nil
49,410	February 11, 2015	\$ 0.27	0.56 %	1	40.83 %	\$Nil

**(d) Share purchase option compensation plan**

The Company's stock option plan permits the issuance of options up to a maximum of 10% of the Company's issued share capital. Stock options issued to any consultant or person providing investor relations services cannot exceed 2% of the issued and outstanding common shares in any twelve month period. At December 31, 2017, the Company had reserved 929,963 stock options that may be granted. The exercise price of any option cannot be less than the volume weighted average trading price of the shares for the five trading days immediately preceding the date of the grant.

The maximum term of all options is five years. The Board of Directors determines the term of the option (to a maximum of five years) and the time during which any option may vest. Options granted to consultants or persons providing investor relations services shall vest in stages with no more than 25% of such option being exercisable in any three month period. All options granted during the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015 vested on the grant date.

The Company's stock option plan permits the option holder to exercise cashless by surrendering a portion of the underlying option shares to pay for the exercise price and the corresponding withholding taxes, if applicable.





**12. Share capital and reserves (Continued)****(d) Share purchase option compensation plan (Continued)**

The continuity of stock options for the year ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015 are as follows:

Expiry date	Exercise price	Dec 31, 2016	Granted	Exercised	Expired	December 31, 2017
January 6, 2017	\$ 0.98	1,180,000	-	(1,180,000) <sup>(i)</sup>	-	-
May 4, 2017	\$ 1.91	175,000	-	(75,000 )	(100,000)	-
June 8, 2017	\$ 1.98	75,000	-	-	(75,000 )	-
August 26, 2017	\$ 0.74	1,310,000	-	(1,310,000) <sup>(i)</sup>	-	-
September 11, 2017	\$ 2.31	500,000	-	-	(500,000)	-
November 22, 2017	\$ 2.22	100,000	-	-	(100,000)	-
April 4, 2018	\$ 1.74	90,000	-	-	-	90,000
May 6, 2018	\$ 1.41	100,000	-	-	-	100,000
June 8, 2018	\$ 1.44	1,915,000	-	-	-	1,915,000
June 18, 2018	\$ 1.46	250,000	-	-	-	250,000
June 29, 2018	\$ 1.71	15,000	-	-	-	15,000
August 9, 2018	\$ 1.91	491,000	-	-	-	491,000
September 15, 2018	\$ 1.85	170,000	-	-	-	170,000
December 11, 2018	\$ 0.72	724,000	-	(134,000 ) <sup>(i)</sup>	-	590,000
December 11, 2018	\$ 1.68	150,000	-	-	-	150,000
December 11, 2018	\$ 1.80	20,000	-	-	-	20,000
January 2, 2019	\$ 1.04	375,000	-	-	-	375,000
March 17, 2019	\$ 1.35	-	207,000	-	-	207,000
May 4, 2019	\$ 1.99	-	175,000	-	-	175,000
May 19, 2019	\$ 1.84	-	75,000	-	-	75,000
June 12, 2019	\$ 1.89	-	75,000	-	-	75,000
July 2, 2019	\$ 1.32	150,000	-	-	-	150,000
July 2, 2019	\$ 1.19	60,000	-	-	-	60,000
July 2, 2019	\$ 1.34	-	1,427,000	-	-	1,427,000
September 19, 2019	\$ 1.40	-	1,160,000	-	-	1,160,000
April 30, 2020	\$ 1.53	-	500,000	-	-	500,000
April 30, 2020	\$ 1.14	-	100,000	-	-	100,000
September 30, 2020	\$ 1.25	-	1,195,000	-	-	1,195,000
Options outstanding and exercisable		7,850,000	4,914,000	(2,699,000)	(775,000)	9,290,000
Weighted average exercise price		\$1.29	\$1.39	\$0.88	\$2.21	\$1.39

(i)

In accordance with the Company's stock option plan, options holders exercised 350,000; 1,150,000 and 92,000 stock options on a cashless basis at an exercise price of \$0.98, \$0.74 and \$0.72 respectively. The total number of shares issued in connection with the cashless exercise of options was 532,836.

**12. Share capital and reserves (Continued)****(d) Share purchase option compensation plan (Continued)**

The weighted average remaining life of stock options outstanding at December 31, 2017 was 1.33 years (2016 – 1.13 years).

Expiry date	Exercise price	Dec 31, 2015	Granted	Exercised	Expired / cancelled	Dec 31, 2016
May 6, 2016	* \$ 1.33	65,000	-	-	(65,000 )	-
June 8, 2016	* \$ 2.89	2,145,000	-	-	(2,145,000)	-
July 14, 2016	* \$ 1.37	130,000	-	(120,000) <sup>(i)</sup>	(10,000 )	-
August 15, 2016	* \$ 2.57	150,000	-	-	(150,000 )	-
October 10, 2016	* \$ 1.23	150,000	-	(150,000) <sup>(i)</sup>	-	-
January 6, 2017	* \$ 0.98	1,180,000	-	-	-	1,180,000
May 4, 2017	* \$ 1.91	200,000	-	-	(25,000 )	175,000
June 8, 2017	* \$ 1.98	75,000	-	-	-	75,000
August 26, 2017	* \$ 0.74	1,445,000	-	(135,000)	-	1,310,000
September 11, 2017	* \$ 2.31	500,000	-	-	-	500,000
November 22, 2017	* \$ 2.22	100,000	-	-	-	100,000
April 4, 2018	* \$ 1.74	90,000	-	-	-	90,000
May 6, 2018	\$ 1.41	-	100,000	-	-	100,000
June 8, 2018	\$ 1.44	-	1,915,000	-	-	1,915,000
June 18, 2018	* \$ 1.46	250,000	-	-	-	250,000
June 29, 2018	\$ 1.71	-	15,000	-	-	15,000
August 9, 2018	\$ 1.91	-	491,000	-	-	491,000
September 15, 2018	\$ 1.85	-	170,000	-	-	170,000
December 11, 2018	\$ 0.72	756,000	-	(32,000 )	-	724,000
December 11, 2018	\$ 1.68	-	150,000	-	-	150,000
December 11, 2018	\$ 1.80	-	20,000	-	-	20,000
January 2, 2019	* \$ 1.04	375,000	-	-	-	375,000
July 2, 2019	* \$ 1.32	150,000	-	-	-	150,000
July 2, 2019	\$ 1.19	-	60,000	-	-	60,000
Options outstanding and exercisable		7,761,000	2,921,000	(437,000)	(2,395,000)	7,850,000
Weighted average exercise price		\$1.65	\$1.55	\$1.08	\$2.81	\$1.29

In accordance with the Company's stock option plan, options holders exercised 105,000 and 150,000 stock options <sup>(i)</sup>on a cashless basis at an exercise price of \$1.37 and \$1.23. The total number of shares issued in connection with the cashless exercise of options was 63,510.



**12. Share capital and reserves (Continued)****(d) Share purchase option compensation plan (Continued)**

Expiry date	Exercise price	December 31, 2014	Granted	Exercised	Expired / cancelled	December 31, 2015
January 4, 2015	\$ 1.14	970,000	-	-	(970,000 )	-
February 22, 2015	\$ 2.26	20,000	-	-	(20,000 )	-
April 25, 2015	\$ 1.67	25,000	-	-	(25,000 )	-
June 21, 2015	\$ 1.00	140,000	-	-	(140,000 )	-
July 16, 2015	\$ 0.92	200,000	-	-	(200,000 )	-
August 27, 2015	\$ 2.22	205,000	-	-	(205,000 )	-
September 20, 2015	* \$ 2.34	100,000	-	-	(100,000 )	-
November 22, 2015	* \$ 2.40	75,000	-	-	(75,000 )	-
May 6, 2016	* \$ 1.33	65,000	-	-	-	65,000
June 8, 2016	* \$ 2.89	2,270,000	-	-	(125,000 )	2,145,000
July 14, 2016	* \$ 1.37	150,000	-	-	(20,000 )	130,000
August 15, 2016	* \$ 2.57	150,000	-	-	-	150,000
October 10, 2016	* \$ 1.23	150,000	-	-	-	150,000
January 6, 2017	* \$ 0.98	-	1,180,000	-	-	1,180,000
May 4, 2017	* \$ 1.91	225,000	-	-	(25,000 )	200,000
June 8, 2017	* \$ 1.98	75,000	-	-	-	75,000
August 26, 2017	* \$ 0.74	-	1,445,000	-	-	1,445,000
September 11, 2017	* \$ 2.31	500,000	-	-	-	500,000
November 22, 2017	* \$ 2.22	100,000	-	-	-	100,000
April 4, 2018	* \$ 1.74	90,000	-	-	-	90,000
June 18, 2018	* \$ 1.46	250,000	-	-	-	250,000
December 11, 2018	\$ 0.72	-	756,000	-	-	756,000
January 2, 2019	* \$ 1.04	375,000	-	-	-	375,000
July 2, 2019	* \$ 1.32	150,000	-	-	-	150,000
Options outstanding and exercisable		6,285,000	3,381,000	-	(1,905,000)	7,761,000
Weighted average exercise price		\$ 2.05	\$0.82	-	\$1.48	\$ 1.65

\* On August 20, 2015, the Company adjusted the exercise price on outstanding stock options proportionately to reflect the value transferred to Almadex. The weighted average exercise price as at December 31, 2014 changed, from \$2.29 to \$2.05.

**12. Share capital and reserves (Continued)****(d) Share purchase option compensation plan (continued)**

The weighted average fair value of options granted during the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, calculated using the Black-Scholes model at grant date, are as follows:

## Weighted average assumptions used

Number of options	Date of grant	Fair value per share	Risk free interest rate	Expected life (in years)	Expected volatility	Expected dividends
1,195,000	December 22, 2017	\$ 0.62	1.71 %	3	65.20 %	\$Nil
100,000	November 23, 2017	\$ 0.50	1.46 %	3	63.93 %	\$Nil
500,000	September 12, 2017	\$ 0.55	1.59 %	2.5	63.12 %	\$Nil
1,160,000	August 25, 2017	\$ 0.48	1.24 %	2	62.80 %	\$Nil
75,000	June 12, 2017	\$ 0.63	0.88 %	2	65.95 %	\$Nil
75,000	May 19, 2017	\$ 0.60	0.72 %	2	65.65 %	\$Nil
175,000	May 4, 2017	\$ 0.63	0.71 %	2	65.77 %	\$Nil
207,000	March 17, 2017	\$ 0.47	0.80 %	2	61.28 %	\$Nil
1,427,000	January 11, 2017	\$ 0.54	0.75 %	2	68.94 %	\$Nil
60,000	December 21, 2016	\$ 0.42	0.83 %	2	70.18 %	\$Nil
20,000	November 2, 2016	\$ 0.69	0.54 %	2	68.31 %	\$Nil
150,000	October 6, 2016	\$ 0.57	0.60 %	2	68.47 %	\$Nil
170,000	September 15, 2016	\$ 0.70	0.58 %	2	68.08 %	\$Nil
491,000	August 9, 2016	\$ 0.76	0.50 %	2	67.52 %	\$Nil
15,000	June 29, 2016	\$ 0.87	0.54 %	2	66.44 %	\$Nil
1,915,000	June 8, 2016	\$ 0.62	0.54 %	2	64.68 %	\$Nil
100,000	May 6, 2016	\$ 0.52	0.54 %	2	63.84 %	\$Nil
756,000	December 11, 2015	\$ 0.29	0.40 %	3	55.79 %	\$Nil
1,445,000	August 26, 2015	\$ 0.20	0.53 %	2	58.76 %	\$Nil
1,180,000	January 6, 2015	\$ 0.37	0.56 %	2	52.37 %	\$Nil

Total share-based payments expenses as a result of options granted and vested during the year ended December 31, 2017 was \$2,693,070 (2016 - \$1,869,010; 2015 -\$950,740)

**13. Related party transactions and balances****(a) Compensation of key management personnel**

Key management includes members of the Board, the President and Chief Executive Officer, the Chief Financial Officer and the Vice President, Corporate Development. The net aggregate compensation paid or payable to key management for services after recovery from Almadex (Note 13 (b)) is as follows:

	December 31, 2017	December 31, 2016	December 31, 2015	
Salaries and benefits	\$813,400	\$755,475	\$740,208	(i)
Share-based payments	2,216,170	1,537,060	725,165	
Directors' fees	70,000	41,000	48,000	
	\$3,099,570	\$2,333,535	\$1,513,373	

For the year ended December 31, 2015, Hawk Mountain Resources Ltd. ("Hawk Mountain"), a private company of which the Chairman of the Company is a shareholder, was paid \$193,333 for geological services provided to the (i) Company and is recorded in general exploration expenses. The services agreement with Hawk Mountain was terminated effective December 31, 2015. Effective January 1, 2016, the Company entered into an employment contract with the Chairman directly.

**(b) Almadex Minerals Ltd ("Almadex")**

Effective August 1, 2015, approximately 30% of administrative expenses is recovered from Almadex pursuant to the Administrative Service Agreement.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company received \$499,798 (2016 - \$464,498; 2015 - \$181,405) from Almadex for administrative services fees included in other income.

At December 31, 2017, the Company accrued \$153,038 (2016 - \$63,429) payable to Almadex for drilling equipment rental services in Mexico.

At December 31, 2017, included in accounts receivable is \$195,551 (2016 - \$149,429) due from Almadex in relation to administrative expenses recoveries.

**(c) *Other related party transactions***

During the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company paid a company controlled by a Director of the Company, \$Nil (2016 - \$Nil; 2015 - \$1,200) for administrative services provided to the Company.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company employed the Chairman's daughter for a salary of \$43,800 less statutory deductions (2016 - \$38,800; 2015 - \$43,225) for marketing and administrative services provided to the Company.



#### 14. Income on Exploration and Evaluation Assets

Income on exploration and evaluation assets is comprised of the following:

Year ended		
December 31,		
2017	2016	2015
\$-	\$ -	\$32,920
\$-	\$ -	\$32,920

During the year ended December 31, 2015, the Company received a 2014 British Columbia Mining Exploration Tax Credit (“BCMETS”) refund from the formerly held Merit projects in British Columbia, Canada.

#### 15. Net loss per share

*Basic and diluted net loss per share*

The calculation of basic net loss per share for the year ended December 31, 2017 was based on the loss attributable to common shareholders of \$5,231,295 (2016 - \$4,023,504; 2015 - \$1,144,525) and a weighted average number of common shares outstanding of 95,873,417 (2016 – 82,322,754, 2015 – 73,248,803)

The calculation of diluted net loss per share for the year ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015 did not include the effect of stock options and warrants as they are anti-dilutive.

**16. Supplemental cash flow information**

Supplemental information regarding non-cash transactions is as follows:

	December 31, 2017	December 31, 2016	December 31, 2015
Investing and financing activities			
Exploration and evaluation assets expenditures included in trade and other payables	\$ 493,943	\$ 535,254	\$ 265,393
Contribution from spin-out assets; recognition of Exploration and evaluation cost reclassified from share capital	-	-	184,169
Residual value of warrants classified to reserves from share capital	-	-	180,267
Fair value of finders' warrants	180,691	17,918	19,325
Fair value of shares issued pursuant to mill option agreement	-	-	273,358
Fair value of finders' warrants transferred to share capital on exercise of finders' warrants	12,797	5,984	-
Fair value of cash stock options transferred to share capital on exercise of options	496,859	43,180	-
Fair value of cashless stock options transferred to share capital on exercise of options	387,930	108,300	-

Supplemental information regarding the split between cash and cash equivalents is as follows:

	December 31, 2017	December 31, 2016
Cash	\$ 1,449,184	\$ 1,427,306
Term Deposits	14,885,350	8,342,700
	\$ 16,334,534	\$ 9,770,006

**17. Income Taxes**

(a) The provision for income taxes differs from the amounts computed by applying the Canadian statutory rates to the net loss before income taxes due to the following:

	December 31, 2017	December 31, 2016	December 31, 2015
Loss before income taxes	\$(5,231,295)	\$(4,023,504)	\$(1,549,125)
Statutory rate	26.00 %	26.00 %	26.00 %
Expected income tax	(1,360,137)	(1,046,111)	(402,773 )
Effect of different tax rates in foreign jurisdictions	9,728	343	(8,855 )
Non-deductible share-based payments	700,198	485,943	247,192
Other permanent items	3,360	2,022	213,166
Change in deferred tax assets not recognized	1,921,226	3,518,776	(574,942 )
Impact of change in tax rates	(348,020 )	-	-
Impact of change in expected manner of recovery	-	853,274	(306,411 )
Share issuance costs	(399,602 )	(39,241 )	(21,723 )
True-ups and other	(526,753 )	(3,775,006)	449,746
Deferred income tax (recovery) expenses	\$-	\$-	\$(404,600 )

In September 2017, the British Columbia (BC) Government proposed changes to the general corporate income tax rate to increase the rate from 11% to 12% effective January 1, 2018 and onwards. This change in tax rate was substantively enacted on October 26, 2017. The relevant deferred tax balances have been remeasured to reflect the increase in the Company's combined Federal and Provincial (BC) general corporate income tax rate from 26% to 27%.

The Company's deferred income tax recovery and deferred income tax liability relates to the Mexican income tax and Special Mining Duty ("SMD") associated with the Tuligtic project. As a consequence of the Company's spin-out (Note 2), management has determined that the Company will most likely recover the carrying amount of the (b) Tuligtic property through use rather than through sale. Before the spin-out was planned, it was management's expectation that the carrying amount of the Tuligtic property would be recovered through sale rather than through use. Given this change in expected manner of recovery, the Company has reflected the tax impacts in the financial statements.

The significant components of deferral income taxes assets (liabilities) are as follows:

December 31, 2017	December 31, 2016
-------------------------	-------------------------

Deferred tax assets		
Non-capital losses	\$4,282,555	\$4,570,832
Deferred tax liabilities		
Exploration and evaluation assets	(5,717,437)	(6,005,714)
Net deferred tax liabilities	\$(1,434,882)	\$(1,434,882)

**17. Income Taxes (Continued)**

(c) Deductible temporary differences, unused tax losses and unused tax credits for which no deferred tax assets have been recognized are attributable to the following:

	December 31, 2017	December 31, 2016
Non-capital loss carry forwards	\$17,803,193	\$13,238,619
Capital loss carry forwards	24,538,993	24,538,993
Exploration and evaluation assets	8,221,842	8,221,842
Share issue costs	1,778,234	548,690
Property, plant and equipment	10,127	33,492
Cumulative eligible capital deduction	507,429	545,623
Investment tax credit	239,849	239,849
	\$53,099,667	\$47,367,108

At December 31, 2017, the Company had operating loss carry forwards available for tax purposes in Canada of \$15,706,045 (2016 - \$13,184,889) which expire between 2032 and 2037 and in Mexico of \$16,378,174 (2016 - \$15,415,208) which expire between 2022 and 2027.

**18. Commitments**

The Company has entered into a new operating lease for office premises effective April 1, 2017 through to March 31, 2022.

As at December 31, 2017, the remaining payments for executive contracts and the operating lease are due as follows:

	2018	2019	2020	2021	2022	Total
Office lease	\$148,410	\$150,884	\$154,182	\$155,006	\$38,752	\$647,234
Executive contracts	575,000	240,000	240,000	240,000	-	1,295,000
	\$723,410	\$390,884	\$394,182	\$395,006	\$38,752	\$1,942,234



**19. Financial instruments**

The fair values of the Company's cash and cash equivalents, accounts receivable and trade and other payables approximate their carrying values because of the short-term nature of these instruments. Refer to Note 4(c) regarding classification of these financial instruments.

The Company's financial instruments are exposed to certain financial risks, including currency risk, credit risk, liquidity risk, interest rate risk and commodity and equity price risk.

**(a) Currency risk**

The Company's property interests in Mexico make it subject to foreign currency fluctuations and inflationary pressures which may adversely affect the Company's financial position, results of operations and cash flows. The Company is affected by changes in exchange rates between the Canadian dollar, the US dollar and Mexican peso. The Company does not invest in foreign currency contracts to mitigate the risks.

As at December 31, 2017, the Company is exposed to foreign exchange risk through the following monetary assets and liabilities denominated in currencies other than the functional currency of the applicable subsidiary:

All amounts in Canadian dollars	US dollar	Mexican peso
Cash and cash equivalents	\$3,578,279	\$97,264
Accounts receivable and prepaid expenses	4,019	-
Total assets	\$3,582,298	\$97,264
Trade and other payables	\$183,904	\$194,083
Total liabilities	\$183,904	\$194,083
Net assets	\$3,398,394	\$(96,819 )

A 10% change in the US dollar exchange rate relative to the Canadian dollar would change the Company's net loss by \$340,000.

A 10% change in the Mexican peso relative to the Canadian dollar would change the Company's net loss by \$10,000.

**(b) Credit risk**

The Company's cash and cash equivalents are held in large Canadian financial institutions, located in both Canada and Mexico. Cash equivalents mature at various dates during the twelve months following the statement of financial position date. The Company's excise tax included in accounts receivables and prepaid expenses consists primarily of sales tax due from the federal government of Canada.



**19. Financial instruments (Continued)**

**(b) Credit risk (Continued)**

To mitigate exposure to credit risk on cash and cash equivalents, the Company has established policies to limit the concentration of credit risk with any given banking institution where the funds are held, to ensure counterparties demonstrate minimum acceptable credit risk worthiness and ensure liquidity of available funds.

As at December 31, 2017, the Company's maximum exposure to credit risk is the carrying value of its cash and cash equivalents, and accounts receivable.

**(c) Liquidity risk**

Liquidity risk is the risk that the Company will not be able to meet its financial obligations as they fall due. The Company manages liquidity risk through the management of its capital structure.

Trade and other payables are due within twelve months of the statement of financial position date.

**(d) Interest rate risk**

Interest rate risk is the risk that the fair value or future cash flows of a financial instrument will fluctuate because of changes in market interest rates. The Company is exposed to varying interest rates on cash and cash equivalents. The Company has no interest bearing debt.

A 1% change in the interest rate would change the Company's net loss by \$149,000.

**(e) Commodity and equity price risk**

The ability of the Company to explore its exploration and evaluation assets and the future profitability of the Company are directly related to the market price of gold and other precious metals. The Company monitors gold prices to determine the appropriate course of action to be taken by the Company. Equity price risk is defined as the

potential adverse impact on the Company's performance due to movements in individual equity prices or general movements in the level of the stock market.

## 20. Management of capital

The Company considers its capital to consist of components of equity. The Company's objectives when managing capital are to safeguard the Company's ability to continue as a going concern in order to pursue the exploration of its exploration and evaluation assets and to maintain a flexible capital structure which optimizes the costs of capital at an acceptable risk.

The Company manages the capital structure and makes adjustments to it in light of changes in economic conditions and the risk characteristics of the underlying assets. To maintain or adjust the capital structure, the Company may attempt to issue new shares and, acquire or dispose of assets.

In order to maximize ongoing exploration efforts, the Company does not pay out dividends. The Company's investment policy is to invest its short-term excess cash in highly liquid short-term interest-bearing investments with short term maturities, selected with regards to the expected timing of expenditures from continuing operations.

The Company expects its current capital resources will be sufficient to carry its exploration plans and operations for the foreseeable future. There were no changes to the Company's approach to the management of capital during the period.

## 21. Segmented information

The Company operates in one reportable operating segment, being the acquisition and exploration of mineral resource properties.

The Company's non-current assets are located in the following geographic locations:

	December 31, 2017	December 31, 2016
Canada	\$366,450	\$89,950
United States	4,923,209	1,280,383
Mexico	44,810,040	35,992,658
	\$50,099,699	\$37,362,991

**22. Subsequent events**

On February 7, 2018, the Company granted to employees, officers and directors, pursuant to its stock option plan, 300,000 stock options at exercise price of \$1.11 per share expiring on February 7, 2021.

**SIGNATURE**

The Registrant hereby certifies that it meets all of the requirements for filing on Form 20-F and that it has duly caused and authorized the undersigned to sign this Annual Report on its behalf.

Almaden Minerals Ltd.  
Registrant

Dated: March 28, 2018 By /s/Morgan Poliquin  
Morgan Poliquin, CEO